

# Intel<sup>®</sup> Setup and Configuration Software (Intel<sup>®</sup> SCS) **User Guide**

Version 9.1

Document Release Date: March 20, 2014

# License

Intel<sup>®</sup> Setup and Configuration Software (Intel<sup>®</sup> SCS) is furnished under license and may only be used or copied in accordance with the terms of that license. For more information, refer to the "Exhibit A" section of the "Intel(R) SCS License Agreement.rtf", located in the Licenses folder.

# Legal Information

INFORMATION IN THIS DOCUMENT IS PROVIDED IN CONNECTION WITH INTEL PRODUCTS. NO LICENSE, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, BY ESTOPPEL OR OTHERWISE, TO ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS IS GRANTED BY THIS DOCUMENT. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN INTEL'S TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF SALE FOR SUCH PRODUCTS, INTEL ASSUMES NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER AND INTEL DISCLAIMS ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY, RELATING TO SALE AND/OR USE OF INTEL PRODUCTS INCLUDING LIABILITY OR WARRANTIES RELATING TO FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, MERCHANTABILITY, OR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PATENT, COPYRIGHT OR OTHER INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHT.

A "Mission Critical Application" is any application in which failure of the Intel Product could result, directly or indirectly, in personal injury or death. SHOULD YOU PURCHASE OR USE INTEL'S PRODUCTS FOR ANY SUCH MISSION CRITICAL APPLICATION, YOU SHALL INDEMNIFY AND HOLD INTEL AND ITS SUBSIDIARIES, SUBCONTRACTORS AND AFFILIATES, AND THE DIRECTORS, OFFICERS, AND EMPLOYEES OF EACH, HARMLESS AGAINST ALL CLAIMS COSTS, DAMAGES, AND EXPENSES AND REASONABLE ATTORNEYS' FEES ARISING OUT OF, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, ANY CLAIM OF PRODUCT LIABILITY, PERSONAL INJURY, OR DEATH ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF SUCH MISSION CRITICAL APPLICATION, WHETHER OR NOT INTEL OR ITS SUBCONTRACTOR WAS NEGLIGENT IN THE DESIGN, MANUFACTURE, OR WARNING OF THE INTEL PRODUCT OR ANY OF ITS PARTS.

Intel may make changes to specifications and product descriptions at any time, without notice. Designers must not rely on the absence or characteristics of any features or instructions marked "reserved" or "undefined." Intel reserves these for future definition and shall have no responsibility whatsoever for conflicts or incompatibilities arising from future changes to them. The information here is subject to change without notice. Do not finalize a design with this information.

The products described in this document may contain design defects or errors known as errata which may cause the product to deviate from published specifications. Current characterized errata are available on request. Contact your local Intel sales office or your distributor to obtain the latest specifications and before placing your product order. Copies of documents which have an order number and are referenced in this document, or other Intel literature, may be obtained by calling 1-800-548-4725, or go to: http://www.intel.com/design/literature.htm.

Intel<sup>®</sup> Active Management Technology (Intel<sup>®</sup>AMT) requires activation and a system with a corporate network connection, an Intel AMT-enabled chipset, network hardware and software. For notebooks, Intel AMT may be unavailable or limited over a host OS-based VPN, when connecting wirelessly, on battery power, sleeping, hibernating or powered off. Results dependent upon hardware, setup and configuration. For more information, visit Intel<sup>®</sup> Active Management Technology.

Intel<sup>®</sup> vPro<sup>™</sup> Technology is sophisticated and requires setup and activation. Availability of features and results will depend upon the setup and configuration of your hardware, software and IT environment. To learn more visit: <u>http://www.intel.com/technology/vpro</u>.

Client Initiated Remote Access (CIRA) may not be available in public hot spots or "click to accept" locations. For more information on CIRA, visit Fast Call for Help Overview.

Intel, Intel vPro, and the Intel logo, are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, and the Windows logo are trademarks, or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

\* Other names and brands may be claimed as the property of others.

Copyright © 2014, Intel Corporation. All rights reserved.

# **Table of Contents**

1.1       What is Intel SCS?       2         1.2       What are the Discovery Options?       3         1.3       What is Intel AMT?       4         1.4       Configuration Methods and Intel AMT Versions.       4         1.4.1       Host-based Configuration       5         1.4.2       SMR/Manual Configuration       5         1.4.3       One-Touch Configuration using PSK.       6         1.4.4       Remote Configuration on Sing PKI.       6         1.4.5       Configuration of Mobile Platforms.       6         1.4.6       Unified Configuration Process.       7         1.5.1       Thele AMT and Security Considerations.       9         1.5.2       File Encryption.       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files.       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment.       11         1.5.5       Control Modes.       12         1.5.6       User Consent.       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol.       13         1.5.8       Security After Configuration.       14         1.5.9       Security After Configuration.       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel MEBX.       14         1.	Chap	ter 1 Int	troduction	. 1
1.2       What are the Discovery Options?       3         1.3       What is Intel AMT?       4         1.4       Configuration Methods and Intel AMT Versions.       4         1.4.1       Host-based Configuration       5         1.4.2       SMB/Manual Configuration using PSK.       6         1.4.3       One-Touch Configuration using PKL       6         1.4.4       Remote Configuration using PKL       6         1.4.5       Configuration of Mobile Platforms.       6         1.4.6       Unlified Configuration second       9         1.5.1       Password Format.       9         1.5.2       File Encryption       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files.       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment.       11         1.5.5       Control Modes.       12         1.5.6       User Consent.       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol.       13         1.5.8       Security After Configuration.       14         1.5.9       Security After Configuration.       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel AMT Device.       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Digest).       15	1.1	What is i	Intel SCS?	. 2
1.3       What is Intel AMT?.       4         1.4       Configuration Methods and Intel AMT Versions.       4         1.4.1       Host-based Configuration       5         1.4.2       SMB/Manual Configuration using PSK.       6         1.4.3       One-Touch Configuration using PSK.       6         1.4.4       Remote Configuration using PKL       6         1.4.5       Configuration of Mobile Platforms.       6         1.4.6       Unified Configuration Process.       7         1.5       Intel AMT and Security Considerations,       9         1.5.1       Password Format.       9         1.5.2       File Encryption.       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files.       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment.       11         1.5.5       Control Modes.       12         1.5.6       User Consent.       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol.       13         1.5.9       Security After Configuration.       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel MEDX       14         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Digest).       15         1.6.2       User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).       16	1.2	What are the Discovery Options?		
1.4       Configuration Methods and Intel AMT Versions.       4         1.4.1       Host-based Configuration       5         1.4.2       SMB/Manual Configuration using PSK.       6         1.4.3       One-Touch Configuration using PKL       6         1.4.4       Remote Configuration using PKL       6         1.4.5       Configuration of Mobile Platforms.       6         1.4.6       Unlified Configuration Process.       7         1.5       Intel AMT and Security Considerations.       9         1.5.1       Password Format.       9         1.5.2       File Encryption.       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files.       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment.       11         1.5.5       Control Modes.       12         1.5.6       User Consent.       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol.       13         1.5.9       Security Before and During Configuration.       13         1.5.9       Security Protocol.       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Neebros).       16         1.6.2       User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.7       Maintenance Tasks.       17	1.3	What is Intel AMT?		
1.4.1       Host-based Configuration.       5         1.4.2       SMB/Manual Configuration using PSK.       6         1.4.3       One-Touch Configuration using PKI.       6         1.4.4       Remote Configuration using PKI.       6         1.4.5       Configuration using PKI.       6         1.4.5       Configuration using PKI.       6         1.4.5       Configuration Process.       7         1.5       Intel AMT and Security Considerations.       9         1.5.1       Password Format.       9         1.5.2       File Encryption.       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files.       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment.       11         1.5.5       Control Modes.       12         1.5.6       User Consent.       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol.       13         1.5.8       Security After Configuration.       13         1.5.9       Security After Configuration.       14         1.6       Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.7       Maintenance Tasks.       17         1.7.2	1.4	Configur	ation Methods and Intel AMT Versions	. 4
1.4.2       SMB/Manual Configuration       5         1.4.3       One-Touch Configuration using PSK.       6         1.4.4       Remote Configuration using PKI.       6         1.4.4       Remote Configuration Process.       7         1.4.6       Unified Configuration Process.       7         1.5       Intel AMT and Security Considerations.       9         1.5.1       Password Format.       9         1.5.2       File Encryption.       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files.       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment.       11         1.5.5       Control Modes.       12         1.5.6       User Consent.       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol.       13         1.5.8       Security Before and During Configuration.       13         1.5.9       Security After Configuration.       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel MEBX.       14         1.6       Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.7       Maintenance Tasks.       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks.       17         <		1.4.1	Host-based Configuration.	5
1.4.3       One-Touch Configuration using PSK       6         1.4.4       Remote Configuration vising PKL       6         1.4.5       Configuration of Mobile Platforms.       6         1.4.6       Unified Configuration Process.       7         1.5       Intel AMT and Security Considerations.       9         1.5.1       Password Format.       9         1.5.2       File Encryption.       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files.       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment.       11         1.5.5       Control Modes.       12         1.5.6       User Consent.       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol.       13         1.5.8       Security Before and During Configuration.       14         1.5.9       Security After Configuration.       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel MEBX       14         1.6       Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.6       Default Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.7       Maintenance Tasks.       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks.       17		1.4.2	SMB/Manual Configuration	5
1.4.4       Remote Configuration using PKI       6         1.4.5       Configuration of Mobile Platforms       6         1.4.6       Unified Configuration Process.       7         1.5       Intel AMT and Security Considerations       9         1.5.1       Password Format.       9         1.5.2       File Encryption       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files.       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment.       11         1.5.5       Control Modes       12         1.5.6       User Consent       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol       13         1.5.8       Security After Configuration       14         1.5.9       Security After Configuration       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel MEBX       14         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Oigest)       15         1.6.2       User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos)       16         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks       17         1.7.2       Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs       18         1.7.3       Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI       19         1.8       Support for Integration with Intel SBA       22		1.4.3	One-Touch Configuration using PSK	6
1.4.5       Configuration of Mobile Platforms       6         1.4.6       Unified Configuration Process       7         1.5       Intel AMT and Security Considerations       9         1.5.1       Password Format       9         1.5.2       File Encryption       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment       11         1.5.5       Control Modes       12         1.5.6       User Consent       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol       13         1.5.8       Security Before and During Configuration       13         1.5.9       Security After Configuration       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel MEBX       14         1.6       Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Kerberos)       16         1.7       Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks       17         1.7.2       Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI       19         1.8       Support for Integration with Intel SBA       22         Chapter 2 Prerequisites       23       23		1.4.4	Remote Configuration using PKI	6
1.4.6       Unified Configuration Process.       7         1.5       Intel AMT and Security Considerations.       9         1.5.1       Password Format.       9         1.5.2       File Encryption.       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files.       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment.       11         1.5.5       Control Modes.       12         1.5.6       User Consent       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol.       13         1.5.8       Security Before and During Configuration.       13         1.5.9       Security After Configuration.       14         1.6       Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Digest).       15         1.6.2       User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.7       Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks.       17         1.7.2       Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI.       19         1.8       Support for KVM Redirection.       21         1.9       Support for Integration with Intel SBA       22         Chapter 2 Prerequisites.       23 <td< td=""><td></td><td>1.4.5</td><td>Configuration of Mobile Platforms</td><td>6</td></td<>		1.4.5	Configuration of Mobile Platforms	6
1.5       Intel AMT and Security Considerations.       9         1.5.1       Password Format.       9         1.5.2       File Encryption.       9         1.5.3       Digital Signing of Files.       10         1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment.       11         1.5.5       Control Modes.       12         1.5.6       User Consent.       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol.       13         1.5.8       Security Before and During Configuration.       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel MEBX.       14         1.6       Admin Permissions in the Intel MMT Device.       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Digest).       15         1.6.2       User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.7       Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks.       17         1.7.2       Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.       18         1.7.3       Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI       19         1.8       Support for KVM Redirection.       21         1.9       Support for Integration with Intel SBA       22         Chapter 2 Prerequisites.       23		1.4.6	Unified Configuration Process	. 7
1.5.1Password Format.91.5.2File Encryption.91.5.3Digital Signing of Files.101.5.4Recommendations for Secure Deployment.111.5.5Control Modes.121.5.6User Consent.121.5.7Transport Layer Security Protocol.131.5.8Security Before and During Configuration.131.5.9Security After Configuration.141.5.10Access to the Intel MEBX.141.6Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.151.6.1Default Admin User (Digest).151.6.2User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).161.7Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.171.7.2Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.181.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI191.8Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites.232.1Getting Started Checklist242.2Support dor Integration systems.292.4Support for a Workgroup Environment302.5Required User Permissions31	1.5	Intel AM	T and Security Considerations	. 9
1.5.2File Encryption91.5.3Digital Signing of Files101.5.4Recommendations for Secure Deployment111.5.5Control Modes121.5.6User Consent121.5.7Transport Layer Security Protocol131.5.8Security Before and During Configuration131.5.9Security After Configuration141.5.10Access to the Intel MEBX141.6Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device151.6.1Default Admin User (Digest)151.6.2User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos)161.7Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT171.7.1About Maintenance Tasks171.7.2Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs181.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI191.8Support for KVM Redirection211.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites232.1Getting Started Checklist242.2Supported Intel AMT Versions282.3Support for a Workgroup Environment302.5Recuired User Permiseinor31		1.5.1	Password Format	. 9
1.5.3Digital Signing of Files.101.5.4Recommendations for Secure Deployment111.5.5Control Modes.121.5.6User Consent121.5.7Transport Layer Security Protocol131.5.8Security Before and During Configuration131.5.9Security After Configuration141.5.10Access to the Intel MEBX141.6Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device151.6.1Default Admin User (Digest)151.6.2User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos)161.7Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT171.7.1About Maintenance Tasks171.7.2Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs181.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI191.8Support for NtVM Redirection211.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites232.1Getting Started Checklist242.2Support for a Workgroup Environment302.4Support for a Workgroup Environment302.5Recuired User Permissions31		1.5.2	File Encryption	9
1.5.4       Recommendations for Secure Deployment       11         1.5.5       Control Modes       12         1.5.6       User Consent       12         1.5.7       Transport Layer Security Protocol       13         1.5.8       Security Before and During Configuration       13         1.5.9       Security After Configuration       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel MEBX       14         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Digest)       15         1.6.2       User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos)       16         1.7       Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks       17         1.7.2       Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs       18         1.7.3       Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI       19         1.8       Support for Integration with Intel SBA       22         Chapter 2 Prerequisites       23         2.1       Getting Started Checklist       24         2.2       Support for a Workgroup Environment       28         2.3       Support of a Workgroup Environment       30         2.4       Support for a Workgroup Environment       31		1.5.3	Digital Signing of Files	10
1.5.5Control Modes.121.5.6User Consent.121.5.7Transport Layer Security Protocol.131.5.8Security Before and During Configuration.131.5.9Security After Configuration.141.5.10Access to the Intel MEBX.141.6Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.151.6.1Default Admin User (Digest).151.6.2User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).161.7Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.171.7.1About Maintenance Tasks.171.7.2Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.181.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI.191.8Support for KVM Redirection.211.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA.22Chapter 2 Prerequisites.232.1Getting Started Checklist.242.2Supported Intel AMT Versions.282.3Support for a Workgroup Environment.302.5Required User Remissions31		1.5.4	Recommendations for Secure Deployment	11
1.5.6User Consent121.5.7Transport Layer Security Protocol131.5.8Security Before and During Configuration131.5.9Security After Configuration141.5.10Access to the Intel MEBX141.6Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device151.6.1Default Admin User (Digest)151.6.2User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos)161.7Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT171.7.1About Maintenance Tasks171.7.2Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs181.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI191.8Support for KVM Redirection211.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites232.1Getting Started Checklist242.2Supported Intel AMT Versions282.3Support for a Workgroup Environment302.5Denvired User Remissions293.1Support for a Workgroup Environment303.1Support for A Workgroup Environment30		1.5.5	Control Modes	12
1.5.7Transport Layer Security Protocol131.5.8Security Before and During Configuration131.5.9Security After Configuration141.5.10Access to the Intel MEBX141.6Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device151.6.1Default Admin User (Digest)151.6.2User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos)161.7Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT171.7.1About Maintenance Tasks171.7.2Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs181.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI191.8Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites232.1Getting Started Checklist242.2Supported Intel AMT Versions282.3Support for a Workgroup Environment302.5Dequired User Remissions293.1Support for a Workgroup Environment30		1.5.6	User Consent	12
1.5.8       Security Before and During Configuration.       13         1.5.9       Security After Configuration.       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel MEBX.       14         1.6       Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Digest).       15         1.6.2       User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.7       Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks.       17         1.7.2       Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.       18         1.7.3       Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI.       19         1.8       Support for KVM Redirection.       21         1.9       Support for Integration with Intel SBA.       22         Chapter 2 Prerequisites       23         2.1       Getting Started Checklist       24         2.2       Supported Intel AMT Versions.       28         2.3       Support for a Workgroup Environment.       30         2.4       Support for a Workgroup Environment.       30		1.5.7	Transport Layer Security Protocol	13
1.5.9       Security After Configuration.       14         1.5.10       Access to the Intel MEBX.       14         1.6       Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Digest).       15         1.6.2       User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.7       Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks.       17         1.7.2       Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.       18         1.7.3       Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI.       19         1.8       Support for KVM Redirection.       21         1.9       Support for Integration with Intel SBA.       22         Chapter 2 Prerequisites.       23         2.1       Getting Started Checklist.       24         2.2       Supported Intel AMT Versions.       28         2.3       Support for a Workgroup Environment.       30         2.4       Support for a Workgroup Environment.       30		1.5.8	Security Before and During Configuration	13
1.5.10Access to the Intel MEBX.141.6Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.151.6.1Default Admin User (Digest).151.6.2User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).161.7Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.171.7.1About Maintenance Tasks.171.7.2Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.181.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI.191.8Support for KVM Redirection.211.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA.22Chapter 2 Prerequisites.232.1Getting Started Checklist.242.2Supported Intel AMT Versions.282.3Support for a Workgroup Environment.302.5Required User Permissions31		1.5.9	Security After Configuration	14
1.6       Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.       15         1.6.1       Default Admin User (Digest).       15         1.6.2       User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.7       Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks.       17         1.7.2       Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.       18         1.7.3       Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI.       19         1.8       Support for KVM Redirection.       21         1.9       Support for Integration with Intel SBA.       22         Chapter 2 Prerequisites.       23         2.1       Getting Started Checklist.       24         2.2       Supported Intel AMT Versions.       28         2.3       Support for a Workgroup Environment.       30         2.5       Required User Permissions       31		1.5.10	Access to the Intel MEBX	14
1.6.1Default Admin User (Digest).151.6.2User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).161.7Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.171.7.1About Maintenance Tasks.171.7.2Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.181.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI191.8Support for KVM Redirection.211.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites.232.1Getting Started Checklist.242.2Supported Intel AMT Versions.282.3Support for a Workgroup Environment.302.5Pequired User Permissions31	1.6	5 Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device.		15
1.6.2       User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).       16         1.7       Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks.       17         1.7.2       Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.       18         1.7.3       Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI       19         1.8       Support for KVM Redirection.       21         1.9       Support for Integration with Intel SBA.       22         Chapter 2 Prerequisites.       23         2.1       Getting Started Checklist.       24         2.2       Supported Intel AMT Versions.       28         2.3       Support for a Workgroup Environment.       30         2.5       Pequired User Permissions.       31		1.6.1	Default Admin User (Digest)	15
1.7       Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.       17         1.7.1       About Maintenance Tasks.       17         1.7.2       Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.       18         1.7.3       Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI.       19         1.8       Support for KVM Redirection.       21         1.9       Support for Integration with Intel SBA.       22         Chapter 2 Prerequisites.       23         2.1       Getting Started Checklist.       24         2.2       Supported Intel AMT Versions.       28         2.3       Support for a Workgroup Environment.       30         2.5       Required User Permissions.       31		1.6.2	User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos).	16
1.7.1About Maintenance Tasks171.7.2Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs181.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI191.8Support for KVM Redirection211.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites232.1Getting Started Checklist242.2Supported Intel AMT Versions282.3Support for a Workgroup Environment302.5Required User Permissions31	1.7	1.7 Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.		17
1.7.2Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs.181.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI.191.8Support for KVM Redirection.211.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites2.1Getting Started Checklist2.2Supported Intel AMT Versions.282.3Support for a Workgroup Environment302.5Pequired User Permissions31		1.7.1	About Maintenance Tasks	17
1.7.3Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI191.8Support for KVM Redirection211.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites2.1Getting Started Checklist2.2Supported Intel AMT Versions282.3Supported Operating Systems292.4Support for a Workgroup Environment302.5Pequired User Permissions31		1.7.2	Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs	18
1.8Support for KVM Redirection.211.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites.232.1Getting Started Checklist.242.2Supported Intel AMT Versions.282.3Supported Operating Systems.292.4Support for a Workgroup Environment.302.5Pequired User Permissions.31		1.7.3	Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI	19
1.9Support for Integration with Intel SBA22Chapter 2 Prerequisites232.1Getting Started Checklist242.2Supported Intel AMT Versions282.3Supported Operating Systems292.4Support for a Workgroup Environment302.5Pequired User Permissions31	1.8	Support	for KVM Redirection	21
Chapter 2 Prerequisites232.1Getting Started Checklist242.2Supported Intel AMT Versions282.3Supported Operating Systems292.4Support for a Workgroup Environment302.5Pequired User Permissions31	1.9	Support	for Integration with Intel SBA	22
2.1       Getting Started Checklist.       .24         2.2       Supported Intel AMT Versions.       .28         2.3       Supported Operating Systems.       .29         2.4       Support for a Workgroup Environment.       .30         2.5       Required User Permissions.       .31	Chan	tor 2 Dra	arequisites	22
2.2       Supported Intel AMT Versions.       28         2.3       Supported Operating Systems.       29         2.4       Support for a Workgroup Environment.       30         2.5       Required User Permissions.       31	2.1	Getting	Started Checklist	24
2.1       Supported Internative Coloring       20         2.3       Supported Operating Systems       29         2.4       Support for a Workgroup Environment       30         2.5       Required User Permissions       31	2.2	Supported Intel AMT Versions		
2.4       Support for a Workgroup Environment       30         2.5       Required User Permissions       31	2.2	Support	ed Operating Systems	20
2.5 Pequired Licer Permissions 31	2.4	Support for a Workgroup Environment		
	2.5	Required User Permissions		

Chap	ter 3 Se	tting up th	e RCS		
3.1	About th	ne RCS			
3.2	Selecting the Type of Installation.				
3.3	Using th	Using the Installer.			
3.4	RCS Use	RCS User Account Requirements			
3.5	Using th	e Network S	Service Account		
3.6	Installin	g Database	Mode		
	3.6.1	Supported	SQL Server Versions		
	3.6.2	Installatio	n Permissions in SQL Server		
	3.6.3	RCS User F	Permissions in SQL Server		
	3.6.4	Creating th	he Database		
	3.6.5	Adding the	RCS User to the Database		
	3.6.6	Installing t	the RCS and Console		
3.7	Installin	g Non-Data	base Mode	44	
3.8	User Per	missions Re	equired to Access the RCS	47	
	3.8.1	Defining D	COM Permissions		
	3.8.2	Defining W	/MI Permissions	49	
3.9	Backing	up Data			
	3.9.1	Location o	f RCS Log Files	50	
3.10	Modifying an Existing Installation			51	
	3.10.1	Removing,	/Adding Components	51	
	3.10.2	Changing	the Database	54	
	3.10.3	Moving the	e RCS to a Different Computer	54	
	3.10.4	Deleting th	ne Database	55	
3.11	Upgradii	ng Intel SCS	5		
	3.11.1	Before Sta	rting the Upgrade		
	3.11.2	Upgrading	Non-Database Mode		
	3.11.3	Upgrading	Database Mode	60	
		3.11.3.1	Upgrading the Database	60	
		3.11.3.2	Upgrading the RCS and Console	61	
3.12	Silent Ir	stallation		65	
Chap	ter 4 Us	ing the Co	nsole		
4.1	About th	ne Console		70	
4.2	Connect	ing to the R	CS	72	
4.3	Defining	the RCS Se	ettings	73	
4.4	Creating	g Configurat	ion Profiles		
4.5	Exportir	ng Profiles fr	om the Console		
4.6	Defining Manual Configuration (Multiple Systems)				
4.7	Importing PSK Keys from a File				

Chap	ter 5 Defining Intel AMT Profiles	
5.1	About Intel AMT Profiles	
5.2	Creating a Configuration Profile for Intel AMT	86
5.3	Defining the Profile Scope	
5.4	Defining Profile Optional Settings	
5.5	Defining Active Directory Integration	90
	5.5.1 Defining Additional Security Groups	91
	5.5.2 Defining Additional Object Attributes	92
5.6	Defining the Access Control List (ACL)	93
	5.6.1 Adding a User to the ACL	
	5.6.2 Using Access Monitor.	96
5.7	Defining Home Domains.	97
5.8	Defining Remote Access	98
	5.8.1 Defining Management Presence Servers	
	5.8.2 Defining Remote Access Policies.	
5.9	Defining Trusted Root Certificates	
5.10	Defining Transport Layer Security (TLS).	104
	5.10.1 Defining Advanced Mutual Authentication Settings	105
5.11	Defining Network Setups	
	5.11.1 Creating WiFi Setups	
	5.11.2 Creating 802.1x Setups	111
	5.11.3 Defining End-Point Access Control	114
5.12	Defining System Settings	116
	5.12.1 Defining IP and FQDN Settings	
Chapt	ter 6 Using the Configurator	
6.1	About the Configurator	
6.2	CLI Syntax	
6.3	Configurator Log Files	125
6.4	CLI Global Options.	125
6.5	Verifying the Status of Intel AMT	126
6.6	Discovering Systems.	126
6.7	Configuring Systems (Unified Configuration).	129
6.8	Configuring Systems using the RCS	130
6.9	Adding a Configured System	132
6.10	Creating TLS-PSK Pairs	133
6.11	Configuring a System using a USB Key	135
	6.11.1 Power Package GUIDs	107
		137
6.12	Maintaining Configured Systems	
6.12 6.13	Maintaining Configured Systems Maintaining Systems using the RCS	
6.12 6.13 6.14	Maintaining Configured Systems Maintaining Systems using the RCS. Unconfiguring Intel AMT Systems	

6.16	Disabling Client Control Mode		
6.17	Sending a Hello Message		
6.18	3 Disabling the EHBC Option		
6.19	Running	g Scripts with the Configurator/RCS	
	6.19.1	Scripts Run by the RCS	
	6.19.2	Scripts Run by the Configurator	
	6.19.3	Who Runs the Scripts?	
	6.19.4	What if a Failure Occurs?	
	6.19.5	Script Runtime and Timeout	
	6.19.6	Parameters Sent in Base64 Format	
	6.19.7	Script Authentication Mechanism	
6.20	Configu	rator Return Codes	
Chap	ter 7 Mo	onitoring Systems	
7.1	About M	Ionitoring Intel AMT Systems	
7.2	About A	dding and Deleting Systems	
7.3	Creating	g a View	
	7.3.1	Defining a System Filter	
7.4	Viewing	Systems	
7.5	Searchi	ng for a System	
7.6	Sorting	the List of Systems	
7.7	Changir	ng the Managed State of Systems	
7.8	Detectir	ng and Fixing Host FQDN Mismatches	
7.9	Getting	the Admin Password	
7.10	Viewing	Operation Logs	
7.11	Viewing	Discovery Data	
7.12	Configu	ration States	
Chap	ter 8 Ma	anaging Jobs and Operations	
8.1	About Jo	obs and Operations	
8.2	Viewing	the List of Jobs	
8.3	Job Ope	ration Types	
8.4	Job Stat	uses	
8.5	Creating	g a Job	
8.6	Viewing	Job Items	
8.7	Starting	g, Aborting, and Deleting Jobs	
Chap	ter 9 Pr	eparing the Certification Authority	
9.1	About C	ertification Authorities	
9.2	Using Ir	ntel SCS with a Microsoft CA	
	9.2.1	Standalone or Enterprise CA	
	9.2.2	Required Permissions on the CA	
	9.2.3	Request Handling	

	9.2.4	Running the CA on Windows 2003	
	9.2.5	Defining Enterprise CA Templates	
9.3	Using Ir	Itel SCS with the CA Plugin	
9.4	Defining	Common Names in the Certificate	
9.5	CRL XM	_ Format	202
Chap	ter 10 S	etting up Remote Configuration	
10.1	About R	emote Configuration	204
10.2	Prerequ	isites for Remote Configuration	205
10.3	Selectin	g the Remote Configuration Certificate	
10.4	Acquirin	g and Installing a Vendor Supplied Certificate	206
	10.4.1	Installing a Vendor Certificate	
	10.4.2	Installing a Root Certificate and Intermediate Certificates	
10.5	Creating	g and Installing Your Own Certificate	
	10.5.1	Creating a Certificate Template	
	10.5.2	Requesting and Installing the Certificate	211
	10.5.3	Entering a Root Certificate Hash Manually in the Intel AMT Firmware	211
10.6	Remote	Configuration Using Scripts	212
	10.6.1	How the Script Option Works	
	10.6.2	Preparing to Use Scripts	213
	10.6.3	Defining a Script	
Chap	ter 11 T	roubleshooting	
11.1	Damage	ed RCS Data Files	215
11.2	Connec	ing to an RCS behind a Firewall	215
11.3	Exit Coo	le 88	216
11.4	Exit Coo	le 110	
11.5	Remote	Connection to Intel AMT Fails.	217
11.6	Error wi	th XML File or Missing SCSVersion Tag.	
11.7	Reconfig	guration of Dedicated IP and FQDN Settings	
11.8	Disjoint	ed Namespaces	
11.9	Disjoint	ed Hostnames and AD Objects	
11.10	Kerbero	s Authentication Failure	
11.11	Error: "	Kerberos User is not Permitted to Configure"	
11.12	Error: "	The Caller is Unauthorized."	
11.13	Error wi	nen Removing AD Integration (Error in SetKerberos)	
11.14	Failed C	ertificate Requests via Microsoft CA	
11.15	o Delta Pr	ofile Fails to Configure WiFi Settings	
11.16	Disablin	g the Wireless Interface	
11.17	' Configu	ration via Jobs Fails because of OTP Setting	224

# Chapter 1

# Introduction

This guide describes how to use Intel<sup>®</sup> Setup and Configuration Software (Intel<sup>®</sup> SCS).

### **Note:**

Support for additional Intel products (solutions) was added to Intel SCS version 9.0 with the addition of the Intel Solutions Framework. Most of the information in this guide is related to using Intel SCS to configure and maintain Intel<sup>®</sup> Active Management Technology (Intel<sup>®</sup> AMT). This is because, in this release of Intel SCS, Intel AMT is not fully supported as a "solution" by the Intel SCS Framework. Configuration and maintenance of Intel AMT is still done using the legacy methods and components developed in previous versions of Intel SCS.

The Intel\_Solution\_Framework folder contains documentation describing how to use the Framework to discover and configure other Intel products. That documentation includes references back to this guide where necessary.

This chapter describes Intel SCS and other important background information.

For more information, see:

1.1	What is Intel SCS?	2
1.2	What are the Discovery Options?	3
1.3	What is Intel AMT?	. 4
1.4	Configuration Methods and Intel AMT Versions	. 4
1.5	Intel AMT and Security Considerations	9
1.6	Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device	15
1.7	Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT.	17
1.8	Support for KVM Redirection.	21
1.9	Support for Integration with Intel SBA	22

# 1.1 What is Intel SCS?

Intel<sup>®</sup> Setup and Configuration Software (Intel<sup>®</sup> SCS) is a collection of software components and utilities developed by Intel. You can use Intel SCS to discover, configure, and maintain Intel products and capabilities on the platforms in your network. Intel SCS includes these components:

 Intel SCS Remote Configuration Service – The RCS is a Windows\* based service that runs on a computer in the network. The RCS can process configuration requests sent by the other Intel SCS components. In database mode, the RCS also handles storage of data collected and sent to the RCS by other Intel SCS components.

For more information, see Setting up the RCS on page 32.

- Intel SCS Console The Console is the user interface to the RCS. You can use the Console to create and edit configuration profiles for supported Intel products and capabilities. In database mode, the Console also lets you view data about Intel products that was sent to the RCS. Database mode also includes additional options for Intel AMT. These options include monitoring Intel AMT systems and creating and running "Jobs" on multiple Intel AMT systems. For more information, see Using the Console on page 69.
- Intel SCS Configurator The Configurator (ACUConfig.exe) is used to configure Intel AMT (only) and runs locally on each Intel AMT system. You can use the Configurator to configure the system locally or send a configuration request to the RCS.

For more information, see Using the Configurator on page 123.

- Intel Solutions Framework In previous versions, Intel SCS was capable of discovering and configuring only Intel AMT. But the platforms in your organization can include many other Intel products, some of which you might not even know about! The Framework was created to extend the discovery and configuration capabilities of Intel SCS to other Intel products. For more information, refer to the documentation in the Solutions Framework folder.
- Intel SCS Platform Discovery Utility See What are the Discovery Options? on the next page
- Intel SCS Discovery Utility The Discovery Utility (SCSDiscovery.exe) can be used to get detailed data about Intel AMT (only). This utility does not interface with the RCS. (The Configurator CLI includes a SystemDiscovery command that does interface with the RCS.)
- Intel SCS Database Tool The Database Tool (DatabaseTool.exe) is used to do some of the tasks necessary when installing the RCS in database mode. For example, creating the Intel SCS database.
- Intel SCS Remote Configuration Service Utility The RCS Utility (RCSUtils.exe) is used to do some of the tasks necessary when installing the RCS.
- Intel SCS Encryption Utility The Encryption Utility (SCSEncryption.exe) is used to encrypt XML files used by Intel SCS.
- Intel AMT Configuration Utility This utility (ACUWizard.exe) includes a wizard that you can use to quickly configure systems that have Intel AMT 4.0 and higher. This utility does not interface with the RCS and cannot be used to send requests or data to the RCS. For more information, refer to the Intel AMT Configuration Utility User Guide.

# 1.2 What are the Discovery Options?

Intel SCS includes several methods for discovering data about your platforms.

### **Discovery Using the Platform Discovery Utility**

The Platform Discovery Utility (PlatformDiscovery.exe) is used to "discover" which Intel products and capabilities exist on your platforms. This utility returns "top-level" data about the hardware and software of each Intel product that exists on your platforms. You can use this data to determine which Intel products you can enable on your platforms, and which software or hardware updates are required. For more information, refer to the documentation in the Solutions Framework folder.

### **Discovery Using the Intel SCS Framework**

Each Intel product that is supported by the Intel SCS Framework includes a "Host Plugin". After installing the Framework and the host plugin DLLs on the platform, you can use supplied scripts and API to get data about the products. Data will be returned for each product that has a plugin on the host platform. The data that is returned is defined by the host plugin of each product. For more information, refer to the documentation in the Solutions Framework folder.

# **Discovery Using the Configurator**

The Configurator includes a command named SystemDiscovery. This command gets data from the Intel AMT device and the host platform of the system. You can save the data in an XML file on the system and/or in the registry. You can also send the data to the database via the RCS (in database mode).

When using this command, you have two options:

- Collect the data (from the XML files or the registry) and add it to your own database using a third-party application. To do this, refer to the documentation of your hardware/software inventory application.
- If you are using the RCS in database mode, you can send the data collected by the Configurator to the Intel SCS database. The data is added to the database record of the system. You can then view this data from the Console.

For the syntax of this command, see Discovering Systems on page 126.

Intel SCS also includes a standalone Discovery Utility. The utility contains only the SystemDiscovery command and is located in the SCS Discovery folder.

# **Discovery Using the RCS**

When the RCS is installed in database mode, you can also send data discovery queries from the Console. You can send a data discovery query for a single system, or create a job to run a discovery operation on multiple systems. The Console sends a request to RCS to run remote discovery on the specified systems. The RCS uses the WS-Man interface to get the data from the Intel AMT devices. The data retrieved using this method is only saved in the database, and only includes Intel AMT related data. You can then use the Console to view the data collected for each system (see Viewing Discovery Data on page 177).

# 1.3 What is Intel AMT?

Intel AMT lets you remotely access computers when the operating system is not available or the computer is turned off. The only requirement is that the computer must be connected to a power supply and a network.

The Intel AMT environment includes:

- Intel AMT Systems Computers with an Intel AMT device. The Intel AMT device contains the hardware and software that control the Intel AMT features. The device includes an Intel<sup>®</sup> Management Engine (Intel<sup>®</sup> ME) and a BIOS menu called the Intel<sup>®</sup> Management Engine BIOS Extension (Intel<sup>®</sup> MEBX). The Intel ME operates independently of the Central Processing Units (CPUs) of the computer.
- Management Console A software application used to remotely manage computers in a network. The management console must include an interface that can use the features of Intel AMT.

Intel AMT devices are usually supplied in an unconfigured condition. Setup and configuration is the process that gives management consoles access to Intel AMT features. Intel SCS lets you complete this process.

# 1.4 Configuration Methods and Intel AMT Versions

There are many different versions of Intel AMT. This table gives the configuration methods available for the different Intel AMT versions.

Table 1-1: Configuration Methods

#	Configuration Method	Intel AMT Versions	
1	Host-based Configuration	6.2 and higher	
2	SMB/Manual Configuration	4.0 and higher	
3	One-Touch Configuration using PSK	2.1 and higher	
4	Remote Configuration using PKI	2.2, 2.6, 3.0 and higher	
• Intel SCS can automatically select the method (#1, #3, or #4) that is available for each Intel AMT system			

• Intel SCS can automatically select the method (#1, #3, or #4) that is available for each Intel AMT system (see Unified Configuration Process on page 7).

• Methods #3, #4, and the unified configuration process all require an RCS (see Setting up the RCS on page 32).

# 1.4.1 Host-based Configuration

The host-based configuration method is available from Intel AMT 6.2 and higher. This method lets an application running locally on the Intel AMT system configure the Intel AMT device. All configuration is done locally, using the settings in an XML configuration profile (see Defining Intel AMT Profiles on page 84).

Because this method has less security related requirements than earlier configuration methods, by default the Intel AMT device is put in the Client Control mode (see Control Modes on page 12). You can change this setting when you export the profile.

For more information, see:

- Exporting Profiles from the Console on page 79
- Configuring Systems (Unified Configuration) on page 129

### Vote:

If all your systems have Intel AMT 6.2 and higher, and you do not need to put them in Admin Control mode, you do not need the RCS or Console. Instead, you can use the Intel AMT Configuration Utility. For more information, refer to the Intel AMT Configuration Utility User Guide.

# 1.4.2 SMB/Manual Configuration

The SMB/Manual configuration method lets you configure the Intel AMT device with basic configuration settings. Configuration is done locally at the Intel AMT system with a USB key containing a configuration file (Setup.bin).

After configuration, the Intel AMT device is put in one of these modes:

- **Small Medium Business (SMB) Mode** Intel AMT 4.x and 5.x devices are put in this mode. Advanced (optional) Intel AMT features are not available to devices in this mode.
- **Manual Mode** Intel AMT 6.x and higher devices are put in this mode. All Intel AMT features are available to devices in this mode if a third-party application can configure them.

You can use the Configurator or the Console to create the Setup.bin file. For more information, see:

- Configuring a System using a USB Key on page 135
- Defining Manual Configuration (Multiple Systems) on page 81

### Z Note:

This method is not available for systems with Intel AMT 2.x and 3.x because they cannot read the Setup.bin file.

# 1.4.3 One-Touch Configuration using PSK

The One-Touch Configuration method uses a Pre-Shared Key (PSK) and the RCS. The PSK is put in the Intel AMT device and the RCS to make sure communication is secure during the configuration process. Usually, physical access to the Intel AMT system is necessary if you want to use this method.

These are the main steps of this configuration method:

- 1. Use the Configurator CLI to create the PSK. The Configurator puts the PSK in an output file and in the RCS (see Creating TLS-PSK Pairs on page 133).
- 2. Reboot the Intel AMT system with a USB key that contains the file. This puts the key in the Intel MEBX of the system.
- 3. Use the Configurator CLI to send a configuration request to the RCS (see Using the Configurator on page 123).

### Vote:

If the manufacturer has installed PSK keys in the Intel AMT devices, you can configure them remotely. The manufacturer must supply you with a file containing the PSK keys that were installed in the devices. Then, instead of steps 1 and 2, you import the keys into the RCS from the file (see Importing PSK Keys from a File on page 83).

# 1.4.4 Remote Configuration using PKI

The Remote Configuration method uses the Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) of the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol and the RCS. To use this method, the Intel AMT device must have at least one active hash certificate defined in the Intel MEBX. If the manufacturer does this before he sends the computer out, then you can configure these computers remotely.

These are the main steps of this configuration method:

- 1. Prepare the systems and the network for remote configuration (see Setting up Remote Configuration on page 203).
- 2. Use the Configurator to send a configuration request to the RCS (see Using the Configurator on page 123).

# 1.4.5 Configuration of Mobile Platforms

Remote configuration of Intel AMT (both PKI and PSK) is done Out of Band via the onboard wired LAN interface. This means that mobile platforms can only be configured remotely if both these conditions are true:

- 1. In addition to the wireless interface, they also have an onboard wired LAN interface.
- 2. Before configuration starts, the platform is directly connected to your organizations network via the wired LAN interface (not via VPN).

### Z Note:

Some of the latest Intel vPro platforms do not include an onboard wired LAN interface. It is not possible to configure these platforms remotely. Instead, use the host-based configuration method.

# 1.4.6 Unified Configuration Process

Intel SCS includes a "Unified Configuration" process. This process lets you define one deployment package to configure all Intel AMT versions in your network. Intel SCS automatically uses the necessary configuration method for each Intel AMT device.

The unified configuration process uses two copies of the same profile:

- The first copy is created in the Console. This copy is used by the RCS to remotely configure devices that do not support host-based configuration.
- The second copy is "exported" from the Console and must be included in the deployment package. This copy is used by the Configurator to locally configure devices that support host-based configuration. This copy also includes data (added during export) about the RCS and the required control mode for the Intel AMT device.



Figure 1-1: Unified Configuration Process

### Table 1-2: Steps in the Unified Configuration Process

Step	Description
1	<ul> <li>A script or a batch file runs the Configurator locally on the Intel AMT system. The Configurator examines the Intel AMT device to find if it supports host-based configuration.</li> <li>Note: The name of the command to run is ConfigAMT. You can also use the unified configuration process to do maintenance tasks using the MaintainAMT command. For more information, see:</li> <li>Configuring Systems (Unified Configuration) on page 129</li> <li>Maintaining Configured Systems on page 138</li> </ul>
2 2 2	The Configurator examines the settings in the profile sent in the deployment package.
This ste defined	p occurs if the Intel AMT device supports host-based configuration and "Client Control" mode is in the profile:
3	The Configurator activates Intel AMT on the device and puts the device in Client Control mode. The Configurator uses the local profile to define the settings in the Intel AMT device. All configuration is done locally.
These s defined	teps occur if the Intel AMT device supports host-based configuration and "Admin Control" mode is in the profile:
3	The Configurator sends a request to the RCS to "Setup" the Intel AMT device. <b>Note:</b> The device must have a TLS-PSK key or must be configured for remote configuration with PKI.
4	The RCS activates Intel AMT on the device and puts the device in Admin Control mode.
5	The Configurator uses the local profile to define the settings in the Intel AMT device. All configuration is done locally.
These s	teps occur for all Intel AMT devices that do not support host-based configuration:
3	The Configurator sends a configuration request to the RCS. <b>Note:</b> The device must have a TLS-PSK key or must be configured for remote configuration with PKI.
4	The RCS gets the configuration settings from the profile in the Console.
5	The RCS uses the profile in the Console to define the settings in the Intel AMT device. All configuration is done remotely.

# **1.5 Intel AMT and Security Considerations**

This section includes security related topics.

# 1.5.1 Password Format

Most passwords you define in Intel SCS must be between 8-32 characters, with a minimum of one of each of these:

- A number
- A non alphanumeric character
- A lowercase Latin letter
- An uppercase Latin letter

### Vote:

- The underscore (\_) character is counted as an alphanumeric character.
- The Remote Frame Buffer (RFB) password must be EXACTLY 8 characters long. This password is only used for KVM sessions using port 5900 (see VNC Clients on page 21).
- The Configurator CLI does not accept passwords that start with a forward slash (/).
- The colon (:), comma (,), and double quote (") characters are NOT permitted in these passwords:
  - Intel MEBX password
  - Digest user passwords (including the Admin user)
  - RFB password

# 1.5.2 File Encryption

Configuration profiles created in the Console contain passwords and other data about your network. It is recommended to restrict access to this data. In non-database mode, this data is stored in an encrypted file. In database mode, this data is stored in the SQL database and thus protected by the authentication requirements you define in the SQL Server.

The unified configuration process uses an XML file (exported from a profile in the Console). These XML files can also contain passwords and sensitive data about your network. To protect the data in these files, each profile exported from the Console is encrypted (with a password that you supply).

The XML profiles are encrypted using this format:

- Encryption algorithm: AES128 using SHA-256 on the provided password to create the key
- Encryption mode: CBC
- Initialize Vector (IV) is the first 16 bytes of the Hash

Some advanced options of Intel SCS use additional XML files (for example, the dedicated network settings file). If you want to use these optional XML files, it is highly recommended to encrypt them. The encryption must be done using the same format used by Intel SCS. To do this, you can use the SCSEncryption.exe utility located in the Utils folder.

### For example:

• To encrypt an XML file named NetworkSettings.xml:

SCSEncryption.exe Encrypt c:\NetworkSettings.xml P@ssw0rd

• To decrypt an XML file named NetworkSettings.xml:

SCSEncryption.exe Decrypt c:\NetworkSettings.xml P@sswOrd

For more information, refer to the CLI help of the SCSEncryption.exe utility.

### 🗹 Note:

When encrypting additional XML files, you must use the same password that was used to encrypt the exported profile.

# 1.5.3 Digital Signing of Files

The executable and DLL files of the Intel SCS components are digitally signed by Intel and include a timestamp. (This does not include third-party files.) Using digital signatures increases security because it gives an indication that the file is genuine and has not been changed.

The ACU.dll is a library used by the Intel SCS components to do configuration tasks on Intel AMT devices. When running a command from the Configurator CLI, the Configurator tries to authenticate the signature of the ACU.dll. If authentication fails, the task is not permitted and the Configurator returns an error message.

This authentication is also done on external files run by the Configurator. This is the default behavior of the Configurator, but it can be changed per command (see CLI Global Options on page 125). When running CLI commands remotely or in a deployment package, it is not recommended to change this default.

The digital signature is authenticated against a trusted root certificate supplied by the Equifax Secure Certificate Authority. The time-stamp is authenticated against a trusted root certificate supplied by Commodo. These certificates are located in the user trusted root certificate store of the operating system on the Intel AMT system. The certificates are automatically included in most of the operating system versions supported by the Intel SCS components.

### **Note:**

- Some Windows versions (for example, Windows 8) do not include all of the necessary trusted root certificates. If these systems also do not have access to the Internet, authentication will fail. For more information, see Exit Code 110 on page 216.
- In some environments, authentication of the digital signature can increase the configuration time by up to two minutes

# **1.5.4 Recommendations for Secure Deployment**

Intel recommends these standard security precautions.

### **Recommendations Related to the Configurator**

Intel SCS uses XML files for some of the configuration methods. These XML files can include passwords and data that persons without approval must not access. When using the Configurator and XML files, use these standard security precautions:

- Encrypt all the XML files that the Configurator will use. Use a strong password with a minimum of 16 characters (see File Encryption on page 9).
- Make sure that deployment packages and the encryption password are stored in a location that only approved personnel can access.
- Send deployment packages to the Intel AMT systems with a communication method that prevents access to persons without approval.
- Always use the default requirement for digital signature authentication when using the Configurator CLI remotely (see Digital Signing of Files on the previous page).
- If the Configurator will need to communicate with a CA or create an AD object, give permissions only to the specific CA template or the specific Active Directory Organizational Unit.
- XML files created using the Discovery options are not encrypted. Make sure that you delete these files on the Intel AMT systems after collecting the data that they contain.
- When configuration/unconfiguration is complete, delete all files remaining on the Intel AMT system that were used by Intel SCS components.

### **Recommendations Related to the RCS**

If you install and use the RCS, these standard security precautions are also recommended:

- Because installation of any application or service is a sensitive process, always try to run the installer in an isolated environment. In addition, before you run the installer, make sure that the installer file is signed by Intel and that the digital signature is valid.
- The log files saved by the RCS (in the RCSConfServer folder) are NOT encrypted. These log files contain data about the network that could be collected and used by an attacker. Make sure that you restrict access to this folder and the logs that it contains.
- The RCS is only as secure as the operating system on which it is running. Make sure that the operating system is always updated with the latest security updates, according to the standards used in your organization for critical resources.
- In database mode, the network connection between the RCS and the database is not secured by Intel SCS. Make sure that this network connection is secured according to the standards used in your organization for critical resources.
- In database mode, the database is only as secure as the RDBMS on which it is installed. Make sure that the RDBMS software is always updated with the latest security updates, according to the standards used in your organization for critical resources.

# 1.5.5 Control Modes

After configuration, all Intel AMT devices are put in one of these control modes:

- **Client Control Mode** This mode was added to Intel AMT 6.2 and higher devices. Intel AMT devices in this mode have these security related limitations:
  - The System Defense feature is not available.
  - User consent is required for all redirection operations and changes to the boot process.
  - Permission from the Auditor user (if defined) is not required to unconfigure Intel AMT.
  - To make sure that untrusted users cannot get control of the Intel AMT system, some Intel AMT configuration functions are blocked.
  - During configuration, the Intel MEBX password will not be changed if it is the default password (see Access to the Intel MEBX on page 14).
- Admin Control Mode In this mode all Intel AMT features supported by the Intel AMT version are available.

### 🗹 Note:

By default, the host-based configuration method puts the device in the Client Control mode. All other configuration methods automatically put the device in the Admin Control mode.

# 1.5.6 User Consent

User consent is a new feature available in Intel AMT 6.0 and higher. If user consent is enabled when a remote connection to a computer starts, a message shows on the computer of the user. The message contains a code that the user must give to the person who wants to connect to his computer. The remote user cannot continue the operation until he supplies this code.

- Intel AMT 6.x The user consent feature is available only for KVM Redirection.
- Intel AMT 7.x and higher For devices in Admin Control mode you can define which operations require user consent. For devices in Client Control mode, user consent is mandatory for these operations:
  - Serial Over LAN to redirect BIOS screens and OS Boot text screens
  - IDE-Redirection (IDE-R)
  - KVM Redirection
  - To remotely set BIOS boot options
  - To change the source for remote boot (for example, boot from PXE)

# 1.5.7 Transport Layer Security Protocol

Transport Layer Security (TLS) is a protocol that secures and authenticates communications across a public network. Intel AMT can use these types of TLS:

- **Pre-Shared Key (PSK)** The PSK protocol provides secure communication based on a set of PSK configuration keys that have been shared in advance between two parties using a secure channel. Intel AMT can use the PSK protocol only before and during the configuration process of Intel AMT systems configured by the RCS.
- **Public Key Infrastructure (PKI)** The PKI protocol lets users of an unsecured network securely and privately exchange information using an asymmetric public and private cryptographic key pair. The key pair is retrieved and shared through a trusted authority, known as a Certification Authority (CA). The CA supplies digital certificates that can identify an individual or an organization.

These topics include information about how and when these protocols are used:

- Security Before and During Configuration below
- Security After Configuration on the next page

# 1.5.8 Security Before and During Configuration

The host-based configuration method does not send information to the RCS. Configuration is done locally and thus TLS is not necessary and not used. But, to increase security, make sure that the XML files are encrypted (see Recommendations for Secure Deployment on page 11).

Configuration requests sent from an Intel AMT system to the RCS contain security related information about the network environment. Thus, Intel AMT uses one of the TLS protocols (PSK or PKI) before and during the configuration process.

The type of TLS protocol that can be used depends on the version of Intel AMT:

• Intel AMT 2.1/2.5 - Only support PSK.

You must change the Intel MEBX password of these Intel AMT systems from the default password. After you install a PSK configuration key and change the password, you must reboot the Intel AMT system.

• Intel AMT 2.2/2.6/3.x and higher – Support PSK and PKI.

To use PKI, the Intel AMT system must have a Root Certificate Hash pre-programmed in the firmware (usually by the manufacturer). You must also install a client certificate on the computer running the RCS.

# 1.5.9 Security After Configuration

Secure communications between a configured Intel AMT system and a management console depend on the security settings you define in your network.

You can use TLS-PKI in your network to increase the security of communication with all versions of Intel AMT. When TLS is configured (by defining TLS in the configuration profile), communications with Intel AMT are encrypted. If you do not configure TLS, all traffic sent to and from Intel AMT over the network is sent as plain text.

### **Note:**

TLS-PKI is not available for Intel AMT devices in SMB mode.

# 1.5.10 Access to the Intel MEBX

The Intel<sup>®</sup> Management Engine BIOS Extension (Intel<sup>®</sup> MEBX) is a BIOS menu extension on the Intel AMT system. This menu can be used to view and manually configure some of the Intel AMT settings. The menu is only displayed if you press a special key combination when the computer is rebooting (usually <Ctrl-P>).

Access to the Intel MEBX is controlled by a password, referred to in this document as the Intel MEBX password. Entry to the Intel MEBX menu for the first time requires a new password to replace the default password (usually "admin").

When an Intel AMT system is configured by the RCS or using a USB key, it is put in the Admin Control mode. In Admin Control mode, if the default password is detected during configuration it is replaced with a password that you define. This new password is defined in the configuration profile, or when creating the USB key.

When a system is configured using the host-based configuration method it is put in the Client Control mode. Client Control mode does not support changing the Intel MEBX password. This means that systems configured in Client Control mode will remain with the default Intel MEBX password (if it is not changed manually).

If you use the Unified Configuration process, you can define the control mode for Intel AMT systems that support host-based configuration. For these systems, the RCS will only replace the default Intel MEBX password if you select this check box when exporting the profile: **Put locally configured devices in Admin Control mode**.

# **1.6 Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device**

This section describes how administrator permissions are defined in the Intel AMT device.

### Z Note:

If you "lose" the password(s) of the Intel AMT "admin" accounts configured in your systems, it will not be possible to manage or reconfigure Intel AMT on those systems. Thus, it is highly recommended to define an additional administrator account in Intel AMT (preferably a Kerberos user account). This additional Intel AMT admin account will provide a backup for disaster recovery.

# 1.6.1 Default Admin User (Digest)

Each Intel AMT device contains a predefined administrative user named "admin", referred to in this guide as the default admin user. Intel AMT uses the HTTP Digest authentication method to authenticate the default admin user.

The default admin user:

- Has access to all the Intel AMT features and settings on the device
- Is not contained in the Access Control List with other Digest users, and cannot be deleted

Thus, for security reasons it is important how you define the password for this user (even if you do not use it). The password is defined in the Network Settings section of the configuration profile (see Defining System Settings on page 116).

These are the methods for defining the password of the default admin user:

### **Defined Passwords**

This method is the easiest method to use and has no prerequisites. But, the password you define in the profile is set in all devices configured with this profile. If the password is discovered, all the devices can be accessed. If you use this method, define a very strong password. To increase security, you can also configure systems with profiles containing different passwords.

### **Random Passwords**

Intel SCS generates a different (random) password for each device. What occurs next depends on the mode that was selected when installing the RCS:

- **Database Mode** The passwords are saved in the SQL database. You can also use the Console to view the password (see Getting the Admin Password on page 174).
- Non-Database Mode The passwords are not saved. Because the password is not known to you or any application, after configuration you will not be able to connect to the device using the default admin user. Thus, you can only select the random passwords option if the profile contains a Kerberos admin user. For more information, see User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos) on the next page.

### **Digest Master Password**

The RCS calculates a different (unique) password for each device using a secret key (known as the "Digest Master Password") and system-specific data from each device. The RCS does not need to save these admin passwords because they can be recalculated when necessary. After configuration, applications that need to use the default admin user must recalculate the password themselves or ask the RCS to calculate it for them.

Before you can use the Digest Master Password method you need to:

- 1. Install the RCS (see Setting up the RCS on page 32).
- 2. Define the Digest Master Password (see Defining the RCS Settings on page 73).

# 1.6.2 User-Defined Admin User (Kerberos)

If your network has Active Directory (AD), you can also define your own administrative user in the device that will be authenticated using Kerberos. You can then use this user instead of the default admin user.

### To use a dedicated Active Directory Admin User (Kerberos):

- 1. Define an AD user in the Intel AMT device with the PT Administration realm (see Defining the Access Control List (ACL) on page 93).
- 2. Define a password for the default admin user (see Default Admin User (Digest) on the previous page). The application communicating with the Intel AMT device using the AD user will not use or require this password.
- 3. Run the Configurator/RCS using the credentials of the user defined in step 1.

### 🗹 Note:

- When using a Kerberos user, always make sure that this Kerberos user exists in the ACL of the profile you use to do reconfiguration.
- When using a Kerberos user and the host-based configuration method:
  - The Configurator must NOT be "Run as administrator".
  - Some reconfiguration and maintenance tasks reset the password of the AD object. If this happens, you must clear the ticket of the Kerberos user before this user can do more configuration operations. You can do this by restarting the Intel AMT system or logging off and on again.

# **1.7 Maintenance Policies for Intel AMT**

After a system is configured, it is recommended to maintain and periodically update the configuration settings in the Intel AMT device. If you do not, your management console might lose connection with the Intel AMT device. For systems where this occurs, the Intel AMT features will not be available from your management console. Also, for increased security, it is recommended to periodically renew the passwords used by Intel AMT. Any password that is not changed regularly causes a risk that it might be discovered by persons without approval. If a password is discovered, it could be used to get access to the system via the Intel AMT device.

It is the responsibility of the network administrator to define and schedule the necessary maintenance tasks for their network environment.

Intel SCS includes two different methods for running maintenance tasks (via "Jobs" or using the CLI). It is recommended to select the method that is best for your network environment, and use only that method.

# 1.7.1 About Maintenance Tasks

This section describes the main maintenance tasks and when they are necessary.

### 📝 Note:

The maintenance tasks described in this section are not applicable to systems configured using the SMB/Manual configuration method.

### Synchronizing the Clock

The Intel AMT device contains a clock that operates independently from the clock in the host operating system. For devices configured to use Kerberos authentication, it is important to synchronize the device clock with the clock of a computer in the network. (The clock of that computer must also be synchronized with the Key Distribution Center. This is not done by Intel SCS.) When the clock is not synchronized, Kerberos authentication with the device might fail.

For Kerberos enabled devices, Intel recommends to synchronize the clock at two week intervals.

### Synchronizing Network Settings

After configuration, the Intel AMT device contains IP and FQDN settings that management consoles use to connect to the device. Changes in the network environment or the host operating system might make it necessary to change the settings in the device.

### **Reissuing Certificates**

Intel AMT devices can be configured to use certificates for authentication (when using TLS, EAC, Remote Access, or 802.1x). When certificates are issued by a Certification Authority they are valid for a specified time. These certificates must be reissued before they expire. Intel recommends that you schedule this maintenance task to run a minimum of 30 days before the certificate expiration date.

# **Replacing Active Directory Object Passwords**

If an Intel AMT device is configured to use Active Directory (AD) Integration, an object is created in the AD Organizational Unit specified in the profile. The object contains a password that is set automatically (not userdefined). If the ADOU has a "maximum password age" password policy defined in AD, the password must be replaced before it expires. Intel recommends that you schedule this maintenance task to start a minimum of 10 days before the password is set to expire.

# Changing the Default Admin User Password

For increased security, it is recommended to change the password of the default Digest admin user at regular intervals.

### 📝 Note:

During maintenance, Intel SCS changes the password according to the password method defined in the profile. For more information about these methods, see Default Admin User (Digest) on page 15.

### Changing the ADOU Location

If you change the location of the ADOU containing the objects representing the Intel AMT devices, you must reconfigure the systems. This makes sure that all settings that use the object are reconfigured to use the new object.

To change the ADOU location:

- 1. Define the new ADOU in the configuration profile (see Defining Active Directory Integration on page 90).
- 2. Use one of these CLI commands to reconfigure the systems:
  - Configuring Systems (Unified Configuration) on page 129
  - Configuring Systems using the RCS on page 130

### Vote:

Make sure that you include the  $/{\tt ADOU}$  parameter with the path to the old ADOU so that Intel SCS can delete the old objects.

# 1.7.2 Manual/Automatic Maintenance via Jobs

If you installed the RCS component in database mode, you can run maintenance tasks via "jobs". Jobs are run by the RCS, and do not require the Configurator to be sent out to the Intel AMT systems in a deployment package. You can create jobs that do all the specific maintenance tasks that you select, or create jobs that automatically do only the necessary tasks. You can also define recurring jobs that will automatically run according to an interval (of days) that you define.

For more information, see: Managing Jobs and Operations on page 180.

# 1.7.3 Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI

The Command Line Interface (CLI) of the Configurator includes two commands that you can use to do most of the maintenance tasks. To use this method, you must send the Configurator out to the Intel AMT systems in a deployment package.

These are the CLI commands:

- MaintainAMT See Maintaining Configured Systems on page 138
- MaintainViaRCSOnly See Maintaining Systems using the RCS on page 140

For more information about the Configurator, see Using the Configurator on page 123.

The MaintainAMT and the MaintainViaRCSOnly commands include a parameter named AutoMaintain. You can use this parameter to automate maintenance of Intel AMT systems in your network. This is possible because Intel SCS saves some configuration related data in the registry of each Intel AMT system. The data is updated each time that CLI commands are used to make configuration changes on the system (configuration, reconfiguration, maintenance, and unconfiguration).

The data is saved in this registry key:

- 32-bit operating systems: HKLM\SOFTWARE\Intel\Setup and Configuration Software\ SystemDiscovery\ConfigurationInfo
- 64-bit operating systems: HKLM\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\

Intel\Setup and Configuration Software\SystemDiscovery\ConfigurationInfo

When you use the AutoMaintain parameter:

- 1. Intel SCS uses the data in the registry to make the decision which maintenance tasks are necessary for each Intel AMT system.
- 2. Intel SCS automatically does only the necessary tasks that were identified in step 1. If no tasks are necessary, nothing is done.

This table describes the registry keys and values, and how they are used by the AutoMaintain parameter.

Key/Value	Description		
Certificates	Contains data of up to three different certificates that were configured in the Intel AMT device. The CertificateExpirationDate key contains the date when the certificate will expire. If there are less than 30 days before one of these expiration dates, reissue all the certificates. (ReissueCertificates task.)		
AMTNetworkSettings	Contains data about the network settings configured in the Intel AMT device. The values in the registry are compared with the settings defined in the profile. If they are not the same, the new settings from the profile are configured in the device. (SyncNetworkSettings task.)		
String values, located in the root of the ConfigurationInfo key:			

Key/Value	Description
LastRenewAdminPassword	The last time that the password of the default Digest admin user was configured in the Intel AMT device. If this date is more than 6 months old, change the password according to the password setting defined in the profile. (RenewAdminPassword task.)
LastRenewADPassword	The last time that the password was configured in the Active Directory object representing the Intel AMT system. If this date is more than 6 months old, change the password of the Active Directory object. (RenewADPassword task.)
LastSyncClock	The last time that the clock of the Intel AMT device was synchronized. If this date is more than 3 months old, synchronize the clock. (SyncAMTTime task.) Note: The SyncAMTTime task is also done every time that one of the other tasks is done.

### **Note:**

- Always run the Configurator under a user that has permissions to create and update these registry keys on the Intel AMT system. The AutoMaintain parameter will fail and return an error if it cannot access the registry. Configuration, reconfiguration, maintenance, and unconfiguration tasks will complete but with warnings.
- If the registry keys do not exist, the first time the AutoMaintain parameter is used all the maintenance tasks will be done (according to the profile).

# **1.8 Support for KVM Redirection**

Intel AMT 6.0 and higher includes support for third-party applications to operate Intel AMT systems using remote Keyboard, Video and Mouse (KVM) Redirection.

KVM Redirection lets you remotely operate a system as if you are physically located at the remote system. KVM Redirection uses Virtual Network Computing (VNC) to "share" the graphical output of the remote system. The results of keyboard and mouse commands transmitted to the remote system over the network are displayed on the screen of the local system.

VNC includes two main components:

- **VNC Server** An application located on the remote managed system that permits the VNC Client to connect to and operate the system. From Intel AMT 6.0, a VNC Server component is embedded in the Intel AMT device.
- **VNC Client** An application, usually located on a management server, used to connect to and operate the remote managed system.

### To use KVM Redirection with Intel AMT requires that:

- 1. KVM is enabled in the Intel MEBX of the Intel AMT system. If disabled in the Intel MEBX, KVM cannot be enabled by Intel SCS during configuration (it must be done manually at the system).
- 2. The KVM Redirection interface is enabled in the Intel AMT device.
- 3. A VNC Client is installed on the computer that will control the Intel AMT systems.

### **VNC Clients**

VNC Clients can connect to the VNC Server in the Intel AMT device using these ports:

- Redirection Ports (16994 and 16995) These ports are available to VNC Clients that include support for Intel AMT authentication methods. To use these ports, the VNC Client user must be defined in the Intel AMT device (see Defining the Access Control List (ACL) on page 93). Port 16995 also uses Transport Layer Security.
- **Default Port (5900)** VNC Clients that do not include support for Intel AMT can use this port. This is a less secure option. To use this port:
  - The VNC Client user must supply the Remote Frame Buffer (RFB) protocol password defined in the Intel AMT device. To define the RFB password, see Defining System Settings on page 116.
  - Port 5900 must be open on the Intel AMT device. Intel SCS does not open this port.

### Z Note:

The VNC Client must use version 3.8 or 4.0 of the Remote Frame Buffer (RFB) protocol.

# **1.9 Support for Integration with Intel SBA**

Intel<sup>®</sup> Small Business Advantage (Intel<sup>®</sup> SBA) provides an out-of-the-box hardware-based security and productivity suite designed for the small business user. Intel SBA is pre-installed by the computer manufacturer or supplier, but is only configured when the end user wants to start using its features. Some Intel SBA features can configure and define settings in the Intel ME (just like Intel AMT).

For more information about Intel SBA, see <a href="http://www.intel.com/go/sba/index.htm">http://www.intel.com/go/sba/index.htm</a>.

Some Intel<sup>®</sup> vPro<sup>™</sup> platforms can support both Intel SBA and Intel AMT.

When Intel vPro platforms are configured by Intel SBA, the functionality of Intel AMT is not activated. Intel AMT is activated by configuring the computer using Intel SCS.

On these supported platforms, you have two choices:

- **Uninstall Intel SBA** Prevent your users access to Intel SBA functionality. To do this, you must uninstall Intel SBA.
- **Integrate with Intel SBA** Allow your users to continue using Intel SBA functionality after Intel AMT is configured.

### Important Information About Integration:

- To detect if Intel SBA is installed, you can use the SystemDiscovery CLI command of the Configurator (see Discovering Systems on page 126). Data about Intel SBA is located in the SBAServiceInfo section of the discovery data output.
- The "integration" option is supported only by the host-based configuration methods available in Intel SCS (ConfigAMT and MaintainAMT). If Intel SBA is installed, these methods will automatically try to integrate with Intel SBA.
- During integration, Intel SCS "takes control" of the Intel ME from Intel SBA. To do this, Intel SCS creates a special Digest user account for Intel SBA. This user account is only given the limited permissions that Intel SBA requires. Intel SBA will then automatically use this user account when it needs to define a setting in the Intel ME.
- Some Intel SBA functionality can only operate correctly if the power management setting is configured to Always on (S0-S5). This is also the recommended setting for Intel AMT (see Power Management Settings on page 118). If the configuration profile is defined with a power management setting of Host is on (S0), this is what will occur:
  - If Intel SBA is already configured, the power management setting will NOT be changed and will remain configured to Always on (S0-S5). This is to prevent "breaking" Intel SBA. A warning message is recorded in the log file that the power management setting was not changed.
  - If Intel SBA is installed but not configured, the power management setting will be configured to Host is on (S0). Intel SBA will be put in the "Incompatible" integration mode and will not be allowed to change this setting. Later, if Intel SBA is configured, Intel SBA features that require the capability to wake up the platform will not be available.

# Chapter 2

# Prerequisites

This chapter describes the prerequisites for using Intel SCS to configure Intel AMT.

For more information, see:

2.1	Getting Started Checklist	24
2.2	Supported Intel AMT Versions	28
2.3	Supported Operating Systems	29
2.4	Support for a Workgroup Environment	30
2.5	Required User Permissions	31

# 2.1 Getting Started Checklist

Before you can use Intel SCS to configure Intel AMT, you will need to collect some data about your network and make some decisions. In many organizations, responsibilities and knowledge about the network is located in several departments. You can print out this checklist and use it as a reference as you collect the necessary data.

Getting Started Checklist for Intel SCS					
1	FQDN	<ul> <li>How is Domain Name System (DNS) resolution done in your network?</li> <li>On an Intel AMT system, the host platform and the Intel AMT device both have a Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN). These FQDNs are usually the same, but they can be different. Intel SCS configures the FQDN of the Intel AMT device. This is one of the most important configuration settings.</li> <li>You must define an FQDN that can be resolved by the DNS in your network. If you do not, after configuration you might not be able to connect to the device.</li> <li>By default, this is how Intel SCS configures the FQDN (hostname.suffix):</li> <li>The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the "Primary DNS Suffix" from the host operating system.</li> <li>If this default is not correct for your network, change the setting in the configuration profile. For information about the available settings, see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on page 120.</li> </ul>			
2	IP	<ul> <li>How does your network assign Internet Protocol (IP) addresses?</li> <li>On an Intel AMT system, the host platform and the Intel AMT device both have an IP address. These IP addresses are usually the same, but they can be different. Intel SCS configures the IP address of the Intel AMT device.</li> <li>By default, Intel SCS configures the Intel AMT device to get the IP address from a DHCP server.</li> <li>If this default is not correct for your network, change the setting in the configuration profile. For information about the available settings, see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on page 120.</li> </ul>			
3	Domains	<ul> <li>Do you want to limit access to Intel AMT based on domain location? Intel AMT includes an option to limit access to the Intel AMT device based on the location of the host system. If you want to use this option, you must define a list of trusted domains. When the host system is not located in one of the domains in the list, access to the Intel AMT device is blocked. The list of domains is defined in the Home Domains window of the configuration profile (see Defining Home Domains on page 97).</li> <li>Note:</li> <li>If you use this option, make sure that you have a complete and accurate list of all the domains where the host system can operate. If you make a mistake when defining this list, you might not be able to connect to the Intel AMT device after it is configured. You must make sure that you always configure systems only with a profile that contains a list of domains correct for those systems.</li> <li>You must make sure that you define the domain names exactly as they are defined in option 15 of the DHCP servers (onboard specific DNS suffix).</li> </ul>			

Getting Started Checklist for Intel SCS				
4	VPN	<b>Do you want to permit access to Intel AMT via a VPN?</b> By default, Intel AMT devices are configured to block access via Virtual Private Network (VPN) connections. If you want to manage systems outside of the organization's network and are connected to it using VPN, you will need to change this setting. This setting is defined in the Home Domains window of the configuration profile. <b>Note:</b> A prerequisite for this setting is to define a list of Home Domains (see item #3 in this checklist).		
5	AD	<ul> <li>Do you want to integrate Intel AMT with Active Directory (AD)?</li> <li>If your network uses AD, you can integrate Intel AMT with your AD. Intel AMT supports the Kerberos authentication method. This means that Intel SCS and management consoles can authenticate with the Intel AMT device using "Kerberos" users. The users are defined in the Intel AMT device using the Access Control List.</li> <li>If integration is enabled, during configuration Intel SCS creates an AD object for the Intel AMT device. Some of the entries in this object define parameters used in Kerberos tickets.</li> <li>Before you can integrate Intel AMT with your AD, you must:</li> <li>Create an Organizational Unit (OU) in AD to store objects containing information about the Intel AMT systems. In a multiple domain environment, Intel recommends that you create an OU for each domain.</li> <li>Give Create/Delete permissions in the OU you created to the user account running the Intel SCS component doing the configuration</li> </ul>		
		After the OU is created, you must define it in the configuration profile (see Defining Active Directory Integration on page 90).		

Getting Started Checklist for Intel SCS					
6	СА	<b>Does your network use a Certification Authority (CA)?</b> For these Intel AMT features, a CA is a prerequisite: TLS, 802.1x, EAC, and Remote Access. If you have a CA and want to use these features, this is the data that you need to collect:			
		Which type of CA do you have?			
		<ul> <li>If you have a Microsoft CA, which type (Standalone or Enterprise)?</li> </ul>			
		On which operating system is the CA installed?			
		• What is the name and location of the CA in the network? (Will the same CA be used for all Intel AMT features?)			
		<ul> <li>What Common Name (CN) to put in the certificate created for each feature? Intel SCS sends a request to the CA to create certificates. The certificates issued by the CA include CNs. The CNs are defined in the configuration profile for each feature. By default, Intel SCS puts the DNS Host Name in the Subject Name field. In addition, the Subject Alternative Name will include these CNs: DNS Host Name, Host Name, SAM Account Name, User Principal Name, and the UUID of the Intel AMT system. Some RADIUS servers require a specific CN in the Subject Name field. If you need to define a different CN in the Subject Name field, you can do this by selecting the User- defined CNs option for each feature.</li> </ul>			
		<ul> <li>How does the CA handle certificate requests? Intel SCS does not support pending certificate requests. This means that the CA must be setup to issue certificates immediately without requiring approval.</li> </ul>			
		If you have an Enterprise CA, you must create certificate templates in the CA before you define the profile. For more information, see Defining Enterprise CA Templates on page 193. Note: Intel SCS can request certificates from a Microsoft CA or via a CA plugin. For more information, see:			
		Using Intel SCS with a Microsoft CA on page 191			
		Using Intel SCS with the CA Plugin on page 199			
7	TLS	Does your management console require the Intel AMT system to use Transport Layer Security (TLS)? When TLS is enabled, the Intel AMT device authenticates itself with other applications using a server certificate. If mutual TLS authentication is enabled, any applications that interact with the device must supply client certificates that the device uses to authenticate the applications. TLS is defined in the Transport Layer Security window of the configuration profile (see Defining Transport Layer Security (TLS) on page 104). Note: A Certification Authority is a prerequisite for TLS (item #6 in this checklist). If using Microsoft CA, the CA can be an Enterprise CA or a Standalone CA.			

Getting Started Checklist for Intel SCS				
8	802.1x	<ul> <li>Does your network use the 802.1x protocol?</li> <li>If your network uses the 802.1x protocol, you must define 802.1x setups in the configuration profile. If you do not do this, you will not be able to connect to the Intel AMT device after it is configured. If you need to define 802.1x setups, this is the data that you need to collect: <ul> <li>Which 802.1x protocol is used in your network?</li> <li>Do you want to verify the certificate subject name of the RADIUS Server? You can verify using the FQDN or the domain suffix of the RADIUS server (make a note of the correct value that you want to use).</li> </ul> </li> <li>802.1x is defined in the Network Configuration window of the configuration profile (see Creating 802.1x Setups on page 111).</li> <li>Note: These are prerequisites for 802.1x: <ul> <li>Integration with Active Directory (item #5 in this checklist)</li> <li>A Certification Authority (item #6 in this checklist). If using Microsoft CA, the CA must be an Enterprise CA.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
		<ul> <li>Intel AMT does not support 802.1x when using static IP addresses. This means that both the host operating system and the Intel AMT device must be configured to get their IP address from a DHCP server.</li> </ul>		
9	EAC	<ul> <li>Does your network use End-point Access Control (EAC)?</li> <li>If the 802.1x protocol used in your network supports End-Point Access Control (EAC), you can use NAC/NAP authentication with a RADIUS server to authenticate the Intel AMT device. If you need to define EAC, this is the data that you need to collect:</li> <li>Which authentication method does your EAC vendor use? (NAC, NAP, or NAP-NAC Hybrid.) Note that Intel AMT 9.0 and higher does NOT support NAC.</li> <li>What is the highest algorithm method supported by your authentication server? (SHA-1, SHA-256, or SHA-384). Note that SHA-256 and SHA-384 are only supported on Intel AMT 6.0 and higher</li> </ul>		
		<ul> <li>EAC is defined in the Network Configuration window of the configuration profile (see Defining End-Point Access Control on page 114).</li> <li>Note: These are prerequisites for EAC:</li> <li>Integration with Active Directory (item #5 in this checklist)</li> <li>A Certification Authority (item #6 in this checklist). If using Microsoft CA, the CA must be an Enterprise CA.</li> </ul>		
		<ul> <li>802.1x (item #8 in this checklist)</li> </ul>		

Getting Started Checklist for Intel SCS					
10	Remote Access	<ul> <li>Does your network have a Management Presence Server (MPS)?</li> <li>The remote access feature lets Intel AMT systems (versions 4.x and higher) located outside an enterprise connect to management consoles inside the enterprise network.</li> <li>The connection is established via an MPS located in the DMZ of the enterprise. If you need to define Remote Access, this is the data that you need to collect:</li> <li>What is the location (FQDN or IP address) and listening port of the MPS?</li> </ul>			
		<ul> <li>Do you want to use certificate-based authentication or password-based authentication?</li> </ul>			
		Remote Access is defined in the Remote Access window of the configuration profile (see Defining Remote Access on page 98). <b>Note:</b> A Home Domain is a prerequisite for Remote Access (item #3 in this checklist).			

# 2.2 Supported Intel AMT Versions

You can use Intel SCS to configure Intel AMT on systems that have Intel AMT 6.2 and higher. Each system that you want to configure using Intel SCS must have these drivers and services installed and running in the operating system:

- **Intel MEI** The Intel<sup>®</sup> Management Engine Interface (Intel<sup>®</sup> MEI) driver, also known as HECI, is the software interface to the Intel AMT device. This driver is usually located under "System devices".
- LMS The Local Manageability Service (LMS.exe) enables local applications to send requests and receive responses to and from the device. The LMS listens for and intercepts requests directed to the Intel AMT local host, and routes them to the device via the Intel MEI.

The Intel MEI and the LMS are usually installed by the manufacturer. If they are missing, or you need to reinstall them, contact the manufacturer of your system to get the correct versions for your system.

### 📝 Note:

Support for versions of Intel AMT lower than version 6.2 is deprecated. You can still use Intel SCS 9.1 to configure Intel AMT 6.1 and lower. But, Intel SCS 9.1 was not validated on these versions and thus the results cannot be guaranteed. Support agreements for Intel SCS 9.1 do not include support for issues related to versions of Intel AMT lower than version 6.2. The information in this guide related to these versions is provided for informational purposes only.

# 2.3 Supported Operating Systems

This table describes on which operating systems the Intel SCS components of this release were validated.

Table 2-1: Supported Operating Systems

Version	Configurator	RCS	Console
Windows* XP Professional x32/x64 (SP3)	Yes	No	No
Windows 7 Professional x32/x64	Yes	Yes	Yes
Windows 7 Enterprise x32/x64 (SP1)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Windows 8 PRO x32/x64	Yes	No	Yes
Windows 8.1 PRO x32/x64	Yes	No	No
Windows Server* 2012	No	Yes	Yes
Windows Server 2008 x32/64 (SP2)	No	Yes	Yes
Windows Server 2008 R2 (SP2)	No	Yes	Yes
Windows Server 2003 x64 (SP2)	No	Yes	Yes
Windows Server 2003 R2	No	Yes	Yes

### **Additional Requirements**

- The Console requires version 3.5 of Microsoft .NET Framework (SP1) to be installed on the computer. This is also a requirement when using the IntelSCSInstaller.exe file to install the RCS or the Console. If you cannot install this version, you can use the IntelSCSInstaller.msi file to do a "Silent" install.
- If you are installing the RCS in database mode, the Microsoft SQL Server Native Client must be installed on the computer. Currently, the installers do not verify that this client is installed. If the client is not installed, the RCS cannot connect to the database. The RCS folder contains a folder named "SQLNativeClient" with the 32-bit and 64-bit installers for this client.
- If you are installing the RCS on Windows Server 2003, you must also install these hotfixes:
  - http://support.microsoft.com/kb/968730
  - http://support.microsoft.com/kb/948963
- Intel SCS components can run on operating systems installed with these languages: Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Finnish, French, German, Greek, Hungarian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Portuguese-Brazilian, Russian, Simplified Chinese, Spanish, Swedish, Traditional Chinese, Turkish.
- Intel SCS does not support Non-Latin or Extended Latin characters in filenames or values in the XML files.
- A minimum screen resolution of 1024 x 768 is necessary to use the Console. The 800 x 600 screen resolution is not supported.
## 2.4 Support for a Workgroup Environment

You can configure and use most Intel AMT settings on systems in a peer-to-peer network (a Workgroup). This table shows settings that require services that are not usually available in a Workgroup.

#	To define this setting	You must have
1	Active Directory Integration	Access to an Active Directory (AD)
2	Kerberos Users	<ul> <li>Note:</li> <li>You must configure setting #1 if you want to</li> </ul>
3	802.1x Setups	configure settings #2, #3, or #4
4	Endpoint Access Control (EAC)	<ul> <li>Settings #3 and #4 also need access to a CA</li> </ul>
5	Transport Layer Security (TLS)	Access to a Certification Authority (CA) <b>Note:</b> If you define Remote Access to use password-
6	Remote Access	based authentication, access to a CA is not necessary.
In a Warkgroup without access to a Domain you cannot configure acttings #1. #4 on Intel AMT systems		

Table 2-2: Intel AMT Settings

In a Workgroup without access to a Domain you cannot configure settings #1 - #4 on Intel AMT systems. You can configure settings #5 and #6, but only on systems with Intel AMT 6.2 and higher. In a Workgroup that has access to a Domain you can configure settings #1 - #6 on all versions of Intel AMT.

Users in a Workgroup do not have the necessary permissions to connect to the AD or the CA. This means that the Intel SCS component, which is running on a computer in the Workgroup, cannot access the AD/CA.

Thus, to configure these settings in a Workgroup, you must use one of these methods:

### Method #1: Use the permissions of the user running the RCS

- 1. Install the RCS component on a computer in the Domain that computers in the peer-to-peer network can access. Make sure that the user running the RCS has the necessary permissions to access the AD/CA.
- 2. Use the Console to create a profile in the RCS and define the settings that you want to configure.
- 3. Use the ConfigViaRCSOnly command of the Configurator CLI to send the configuration task to the RCS (use MaintainViaRCSOnly for maintenance tasks).

### Method #2: Unified Configuration

- 1. Do steps 1 and 2 as described in Method #1.
- 2. Export the profile to XML. In the Export Profile to XML File window, supply the username and password of a user that has permissions to connect to the AD/CA.
- 3. Use the ConfigAMT command of the Configurator CLI (use MaintainAMT for maintenance tasks).

For more information, see Unified Configuration Process on page 7.

## 2.5 Required User Permissions

The permissions required by the user account running the Configurator depend on the state of the Intel AMT device.

### **Unconfigured Systems**

The local user account running the Configurator must have administrator permissions in the operating system. On operating systems with User Account Control (UAC), the Configurator must be "Run as administrator". If the Configurator will be required to request certificates from a Certification Authority (CA), or create Active Directory (AD) objects, the user account must have sufficient permissions to do these tasks.

### **Configured Systems**

After an Intel AMT device is configured, reconfiguration and maintenance tasks can only be done by a user defined in the device with administrator permissions. The user account running the Configurator is not required to have administrator permissions in the operating system.

### 🗹 Note:

If the Intel AMT device is in Client Control mode, you can unconfigure Intel AMT without requiring administration privileges in the device. To do this, you must run the Configurator with a local user account with administrator permissions on the Intel AMT system. On operating systems with (UAC), the Configurator must be "Run as administrator".

# Chapter 3

## Setting up the RCS

This chapter describes how to set up the Intel SCS Remote Configuration Service.

For more information, see:

3.1	About the RCS.	33
3.2	Selecting the Type of Installation.	33
3.3	Using the Installer.	34
3.4	RCS User Account Requirements.	34
3.5	Using the Network Service Account	35
3.6	Installing Database Mode.	36
3.7	Installing Non-Database Mode	44
3.8	User Permissions Required to Access the RCS	47
3.9	Backing up Data	50
3.10	Modifying an Existing Installation	51
3.11	Upgrading Intel SCS	56
3.12	Silent Installation	65

## 3.1 About the RCS

The Remote Configuration Service (RCS) is used to configure remotely and maintain Intel AMT devices. The RCS is a Windows based service (RCSServer) that runs on a computer in the network.

You must install and set up the RCS component if you want to do any of these:

- Put Intel AMT devices in the Admin Control mode
- Use the One-Touch Configuration method
- Use the Remote Configuration method
- Use Digest Master Passwords
- Create configure profiles for Intel products supported by the Intel Solutions Framework
- Use the Intel Solutions Framework to publish data to the RCS

You do not need the RCS if you want to configure all the Intel AMT devices in your network using only these configuration methods:

- SMB/Manual Configuration on page 5
- Host-based Configuration on page 5 (in the default Client Control mode)

### Vote:

Intel SCS does not support multiple instances of the RCS working in the same network environment and connected to the same database.

## 3.2 Selecting the Type of Installation

The RCS can operate in one of two different modes (defined during installation):

Database Mode – In this mode, data about each Intel AMT system is stored in an SQL database. This
includes data that can be used to connect to the system and the admin password that was put in the
Intel AMT device. You can then use the Console to monitor the systems and do
reconfiguration/maintenance tasks on them. This mode also supports the new features and options
available when using the Intel Solutions Framework.

To install in this mode, see Installing Database Mode on page 36.

• Non-Database Mode – In this mode, the RCS does not store data about the Intel AMT systems. Configuration and maintenance tasks can only be done using the Configurator. This mode is not supported by the Intel Solutions Framework.

To install in this mode, see Installing Non-Database Mode on page 44.

## 3.3 Using the Installer

The installer (IntelSCSInstaller.exe) is located in the RCS folder of the release package. The same file is used to install the RCS in database mode and non-database mode.

You can only install the RCS on computers running an operating system supported by the RCS (see Supported Operating Systems on page 29). You must have local administrator privileges on the computer where you want to install the RCS. To install the RCS on operating systems with User Account Control, you must run the installer as an administrator.

In addition to the RCS, you can also use the installer to install a Console. You can install the RCS and the Console on the same computer, or on different computers.

## 3.4 RCS User Account Requirements

Before starting the installation, you must decide which user account you want to use to run the RCS. (During installation, the installer does not create the account.)

- If you want to use the built-in Network Service account, it is not necessary to create a user account. This account is more secure, but has some limitations and special considerations (see Using the Network Service Account on the next page).
- If you do not use the Network Service account, create a dedicated user account that will be used only for the RCS. It is NOT recommended to use a group account. You must define a password for this user account, and make sure that you always renew the password before it expires. If the password expires, the RCS will stop working.

### 📝 Note:

If the RCS is installed on a server running Windows Server 2008 (all x32/64 versions and R2), the RCS user account must be a Local Administrator on that server.

When you install the RCS, the installer will automatically give these permissions to the selected user account:

- Log on as a service permission
- Read permission on the folder containing the RCSServer.exe file
- For non-database mode installations only Read/Write permissions on the folder (RCSConfServer) containing the data files used by the RCS (see Location of RCS Log Files on page 50)

(The permissions are given on the computer where the RCS is installed.)

## 3.5 Using the Network Service Account

The Windows operating system includes a built-in security account named "Network Service". During installation of the RCS, you can select this account to run the RCS. When the RCS runs under this account, the RCS communicates on the network using the credentials of the computer running the RCS. This can increase security because it is not easy for attackers to impersonate a computer.

These sections describe special considerations when using the Network Service account:

### Installing Certificates in the Certificate Store

If you want to use the remote configuration method, or configure Mutual TLS, it is necessary to install certificates in the Certificate Store. When using the Network Service account, these certificates must be installed in the certificate store of the Network Service. To do this, you can use the RCSUtils.exe utility located in the Utils folder.

For example:

RCSutils.exe /Certificate Add c:\certificate.pfx P@sswOrd

where certificate.pfx is the certificate file in PFX format, and P@sswOrd is the password that was used to encrypt the certificate PFX file.

For more information, refer to the Intel(R) SCS RCSUtility.pdf also located in the Utils folder.

### **Active Directory and Certification Authority Permissions**

Some Intel SCS features and options use the RCS to communicate with the Active Directory or the Certification Authority in your network. Thus, the RCS requires permissions on the AD and the CA. The Network Service is a local account on the computer running the RCS. This means that when you assign these permissions, you must give them to the computer object representing the computer running the RCS.

### Installing the Network Service User in Database Mode

In SQL Server, the format used for the Network Service username is different for local and remote connections. If the correct format is not defined, the RCS will fail to connect to the database. The format depends on the location of the RCS and the database:

• If the RCS will be installed on the same computer as the database:

"NT Authority\Network Service"

• If the RCS will NOT be installed on the same computer as the database:

"NetBIOS domain name\SAM Account Name"

Where the SAM Account Name is the computer where the RCS is installed.

For example: domain\computer\$

When using the AddUser command of the Database Tool, you must supply the correct format in the Username= parameter. Because the names include spaces, make sure that you enclose the string in quotation marks "".

## 3.6 Installing Database Mode

This section describes how to install the RCS in database mode.

### **Note:**

- Before starting the installation, make sure that this is the mode that you require (see Selecting the Type of Installation on page 33)
- If you are installing the RCS in database mode, the Microsoft SQL Server Native Client must be installed on the computer. Currently, the installers do not verify that this client is installed. If the client is not installed, the RCS cannot connect to the database. The RCS folder contains a folder named "SQLNativeClient" with the 32-bit and 64-bit installers for this client.

### 3.6.1 Supported SQL Server Versions

In database mode the data is stored in an SQL database. You can install the database on a computer running any of these Enterprise versions of SQL Server:

- Microsoft\* SQL Server\* 2008 x32/x64 (SP1)
- Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 x64 (SP1)
- Microsoft SQL Server 2005 x32 (SP4)

```
Note:
```

Intel SCS supports case-sensitive and case-insensitive installations.

### 3.6.2 Installation Permissions in SQL Server

The database is created using the Database Tool. The Database Tool can also give the RCS permissions on the Intel SCS database. To do these tasks, the Database Tool requires these Server Roles in SQL Server:

- **dbcreator** Always required (to create the database)
- **securityadmin** Only required if you want the Database Tool to create the User and Login ID in SQL Server for the RCS. The Database Tool creates this User and Login ID specifically for the Intel SCS database that you define. They do not have permissions in any other database in SQL Server.

You have two options for giving these Server Roles to the Database Tool:

- Windows authentication Run the Database Tool with a Windows user account that has the required Server Roles.
- **SQL Server authentication** During installation, supply the credentials of an SQL Server user that has the required Server Roles (using the Username= parameter).

### 3.6.3 RCS User Permissions in SQL Server

The RCS requires permissions on the Intel SCS database in SQL Server.

During installation, if you let the Database Tool create the User and Login for the RCS, this is what the Database Tool creates:

- A User in the Intel SCS database with these Role Member settings:
  - db\_datareader
  - db\_datawriter
- An explicit Login ID for the User that is mapped to the Default Schema of dbo

You have two options for how the RCS will connect to the Intel SCS database:

- Windows authentication The RCS will use the credentials of the Windows user account that is running the RCS (RCSServer.exe).
- **SQL Server authentication** The RCS will use the credentials of an SQL Server user. This method of authentication is considered less secure. In addition, the Login ID and password of the SQL Server user are saved in the registry of the computer running the RCS (the password is encrypted).

During installation of the RCS, you must select the authentication method in the Database Settings window of the installer. When using the Database Tool to add the user to the database, use the RCSUserWinAuth= parameter of the AddUser command to specify the authentication method.

## 3.6.4 Creating the Database

In many organizations, the company databases are managed by a database administrator (DBA). Usually, the DBA will want to control how the Intel SCS database is installed. The DBA (or you) can use the Database Tool, located in the RCS folder, to create the database before you install the RCS. The Database Tool (DatabaseTool.exe) is a simple CLI that you can use locally on the SQL Server or remotely.

### Vote:

When complete, the CreateDB command creates a storage encryption key file. The file is encrypted with a password that is printed to the screen in the CLI output of the command. Make sure that you save this file and password in a secure location. You will need them later.

This is the syntax and parameters for the CreateDB command:

DatabaseTool.exe CreateDB DBServer=<DB server> DBName=<DB name>

[Username=<SQL Login ID> Password=<SQL password>] [KeyFileName=<filename>]

DBServer=	The name (FQDN) or IP address of the SQL Server
DBName=	The name of the database

Username=	By default, the credentials of the user account running the Database Tool are used to authenticate with SQL Server. If you want the Database Tool to use SQL Server authentication instead, use this parameter to supply the Login ID.
Password=	The password of the SQL Server account (only necessary if the user was supplied in the Username parameter)
KeyFileName=	By default, the Database Tool creates an encryption key file named RCSStorage.key in the folder where the Database Tool is located. You can use this parameter to supply an alternative path and filename.

### **Examples**

### Example #1: Creating a database on the local SQL Server:

DatabaseTool.exe CreateDB DBServer=(local) DBName=TestDB

#### Example #2: Creating a database on a remote SQL Server:

DatabaseTool.exe CreateDB DBServer=192.168.1.10 DBName=TestDB

#### Example #3: Creating a database using SQL Server authentication:

DatabaseTool.exe CreateDB DBServer=192.168.1.10 DBName=TestDB Username=MySQLUser Password=P@ssw0rd

### 3.6.5 Adding the RCS User to the Database

After creating the database, you (or the DBA) must define how the RCS will access the database and which user account it will use. To do this, use the AddUser command of the Database Tool.

This is the syntax and parameters for the AddUser command:

DatabaseTool.exe AddUser DBServer=<DB server> DBName=<DB name>

[Username=<SQL Login ID> Password=<SQL password>]

RCSUserWinAuth=<0|1> RCSUsername=<username> [RCSPassword=<password>]

DBServer=	The name (FQDN) or IP address of the SQL Server
DBName=	The name of the database
Username=	By default, the credentials of the user account running the Database Tool are used to authenticate with SQL Server. If you want the Database Tool to use SQL Server authentication instead, use this parameter to supply the Login ID.
Password=	The password of the SQL Server account (only necessary if the user was supplied in the Username parameter)

RCSUserWinAuth=	<ul> <li>Defines the type of authentication used by the RCS to authenticate with the database.</li> <li>Valid values:</li> <li>0 - SQL Server authentication</li> <li>1 - Windows authentication</li> </ul>
RCSUsername=	<ul> <li>The name of the user account to be used by the RCS to authenticate with the database.</li> <li>If RCSUserWinAuth=0 - This will be the Login ID used by the RCS during SQL Server authentication. If the Login ID does not exist, it will be created by the Database Tool.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If RCSUserWinAuth=1 - This will be the Domain user account under which the RCS will run. You must make sure that you specify the same name when you install the RCS (in the Database Settings window).</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> If RCSUserWinAuth=1 and you are using the Network Service account, the format of the username depends on where the RCS and database are located. For more information, see Using the Network Service Account on page 35.
RCSPassword=	The password of the user account to be used by the RCS to authenticate with the database. Only necessary if RCSUserWinAuth=0.

### **Examples**

### Example #1: Adding a user to a database on the local SQL Server:

DatabaseTool.exe AddUser DBServer=(local) DBName=TestDB RCSUserWinAuth=1 RCSUsername=MyRCSUser

#### Example #2: Adding a user to a database on a remote SQL Server:

DatabaseTool.exe AddUser DBServer=192.168.1.10 DBName=TestDB RCSUserWinAuth=1 RCSUsername=MyRCSUser

### Example #3: Adding the Network Service user (RCS is local on SQL Server):

DatabaseTool.exe AddUser DBServer=192.168.1.10 DBName=TestDB RCSUserWinAuth=1 RCSUsername="NT Authority\Network Service"

#### Example #4: Adding the Network Service user (RCS is connecting remotely):

DatabaseTool.exe AddUser DBServer=192.168.1.10 DBName=TestDB RCSUserWinAuth=1 RCSUsername="domain\computer\$"

#### Example #5: Adding a user (that will use SQL Server authentication):

DatabaseTool.exe AddUser DBServer=192.168.1.10 DBName=TestDB Username=MySQLUser Password=P@ssw0rd RCSUserWinAuth=0 RCSUsername=MyRCSUser RCSPassword=P@ssw0rd

### 3.6.6 Installing the RCS and Console

This procedure describes how to install the RCS and (Console) in database mode.

### To install in database mode:

- $1. \ \ \text{Double-click IntelSCSInstaller.exe.} \ \ \text{The Welcome window opens.}$
- 2. Select **I accept the terms of the license agreement** and click **Next**. The Select Components window opens.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer	×
Select Components	(intel)
Select the Intel SCS components that you want to install on this computer:	
<ul> <li>Remote Configuration Service (RCS)</li> <li>A Windows* based service for discovering, configuring, and maintaining the setting Intel products and capabilities on your systems.</li> <li>Select the installation mode: </li> <li>Database Mode</li> <li>Non-Database Mode</li> </ul>	ngs of
Console A Console that you can use to connect to RCS installations on any computer.	

Figure 3-1: Select Components Window

- 3. Select the check boxes of the components that you want to install on this computer:
  - Remote Configuration Service (RCS) Installs the RCS
  - **Console** Installs the Console. You can install this component on any computer that can connect to the computer running the RCS.

Vote:

When installing the RCS, make sure that the **Database Mode** option is selected.

4. Click **Next**. If you selected to install the RCS, the RCS User Account window opens. This window defines the user under which the RCS will run.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer	×
RCS User Account	(intel)
Specify the Windows user account that will run the RCS on this comp	outer:
Username: Network Service 🔹	Browse
Password:	

Figure 3-2: RCS User Account Window

✓ Note:
In the Username field, by default, the Network Service account is selected. It is recommended to run the RCS using this built-in security account (see Using the Network Service Account on page 35).

- 5. (Optional) If you do not want to use the Network Service account:
  - a. Click **Browse**. The Select Users or Groups window opens.
  - b. Enter the user that will run the RCS on this computer. Enter the username in the format domain\username. In a Windows Workgroup, enter the username in the format computer\username.
  - c. Click **OK**. The Select Users or Groups window closes.
  - d. In the Password field, enter the password of the user you selected (only the Network Service account does not require a password).

6. Click **Next**. The Database Settings window opens. This window defines the location of the database and how the RCS will authenticate with the database.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer	×
Database Settings	(intel)
Specify the location of the Intel SCS database:	
SQL Server:	eload
Database Name:	
Specify how the RCS will authenticate with the database: 🕸	
Windows Authentication (using account: EXAMPLE\administrator)	
O SQL Server Authentication	
Login ID:	
Password:	

Figure 3-3: Database Settings Window

- 7. Specify the location of the database:
  - a. In the SQL Server field, enter the name of the SQL Server where the Intel SCS database was installed.
  - b. In the Database Name field, enter the name of the Intel SCS database exactly as it was defined during installation of the database.
- 8. Specify the authentication method that the RCS will use:
  - Windows Authentication
  - **SQL Server Authentication** If you select this option, enter the Login ID and the password of the SQL Server account. The account that you specify MUST have a password. SQL Server authentication using an account without a password is not supported.

For more information, see RCS User Permissions in SQL Server on page 37.

- 9. Click **Next**. The installer will try to connect to the database. If the installer cannot locate the database a new window named Create Intel SCS Database opens. If this window opens, you have two choices:
  - If you know that the database already exists (because you or the DBA created it using the Database Tool), click **Close** and correct the values you specified in the Database Settings window.
  - If you did not create a database, click **Create Database**. The installer will try to create the database and also automatically create and install the storage encryption key. If you select this option, follow the instructions in the windows that are shown, and then continue from step 12.

10. If the installer successfully located the database, the Storage Encryption Key window opens. This window installs the encryption key for the RCS to use when accessing the database.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer
Storage Encryption Key
Data stored by the RCS is encrypted using a storage encryption key. This key must be installed on the computer running the RCS.
Load and install the key from this file:
Encryption Key File: File Password:

Figure 3-4: Storage Encryption Key Window

- 11. Click **Browse** and select the storage encryption key file that was created by the Database Tool utility when the database was created. In the File Password field you must also enter the password that was used to encrypt the key file. This is the random password that was shown in the CLI when the CreateDB command completed.
- 12. Click **Next**. The Confirmation window opens. This window shows information about the selections you made.
- 13. (Optional) The default installation folder is C:\Program Files\Intel\SCS9.

If you want to change this location, in the Install path field enter a new path or click **Browse** to select it.

- 14. Click **Install**. The Installation Progress window opens. When installation is complete, a message is shown.
- 15. Click Next. The Completed Successfully window opens.
- 16. Click **Finish**. The installer closes. The RCS is installed with default settings. If necessary, you can change these settings (see Defining the RCS Settings on page 73).

## 3.7 Installing Non-Database Mode

This procedure describes how to install the RCS (and Console) in non-database mode.

### **Note:**

Before starting the installation, make sure that this is the mode that you require (see Selecting the Type of Installation on page 33).

### To install in non-database mode:

- 1. Double-click IntelSCSInstaller.exe. The Welcome window opens.
- 2. Click **Next**. The License Agreement window opens.
- 3. Select **I accept the terms of the license agreement** and click **Next**. The Select Components window opens.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer	×
Select Components	tel
Select the Intel SCS components that you want to install on this computer:	
<ul> <li>Remote Configuration Service (RCS)</li> <li>A Windows* based service for discovering, configuring, and maintaining the settings of Intel products and capabilities on your systems.</li> <li>Select the installation mode: </li> <li>Database Mode</li> <li>Non-Database Mode</li> </ul>	f
Console A Console that you can use to connect to RCS installations on any computer.	

Figure 3-5: Select Components Window

- 4. Select the check boxes of the components that you want to install on this computer:
  - Remote Configuration Service (RCS) Installs the RCS
  - **Console** Installs the Intel SCS Console. You can install this component on any computer that can connect to the computer running the RCS

Vote:	
When installing the RCS, make sure that the <b>Non-Database Mode</b> of	ption is selected

5. Click **Next**. If you selected to install the RCS, the RCS User Account window opens. This window defines the user under which the RCS will run.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer	×
RCS User Account	intel
Specify the Windows user account that will run the RCS on this comp	outer:
Username: Network Service	Browse
Password:	

Figure 3-6: RCS User Account Window

🗹 Note:
In the Username field, by default, the Network Service account is selected. It is recommended to run the RCS using this built-in security account (see Using the Network Service Account on page 35).

- 6. (Optional) If you do not want to use the Network Service account:
  - a. Click **Browse**. The Select Users or Groups window opens.
  - b. Enter the user that will run the RCS on this computer. Enter the username in the format domain\username. In a Windows Workgroup, enter the username in the format computer\username.
  - c. Click **OK**. The Select Users or Groups window closes.
  - d. In the Password field, enter the password of the user you selected (only the Network Service account does not require a password).

7. Click **Next**. The Storage Encryption Key window opens. This window installs the encryption key for the RCS to use when accessing the data files.

Intel® SCS Installer	×
Storage Encryption Key	(intel)
Data stored by the RCS is encrypted using a storage encryption key. installed on the computer running the RCS.	. This key must be
Generate Storage Key file	
Encryption Key File:	Browse
File Password:	

Figure 3-7: Storage Encryption Key Window

- 8. Select one of these:
  - **Generate storage key file** Select this option to automatically create and install the storage encryption key.
  - Load and install the key from this file You can select this option if you already have a storage encryption key (for example, you are moving the RCS to another computer). If you select this option, click **Browse** and select the storage encryption key file. In the File Password field you must also enter the password that was used to encrypt the key file.
- 9. Click **Next**. The Confirmation window opens. This window shows information about the selections you made.
- 10. (Optional) The default installation folder is C:\Program Files\Intel\SCS9.

If you want to change this location, type a new path in the Install path field or click **Browse** to select it.

- 11. Click **Install**. The Installation Progress window opens. When installation is complete, a message is shown.
- 12. Click Next. The Completed Successfully window opens.
- 13. Click **Finish**. The installer closes. The RCS is installed with default settings. If necessary, you can change these settings (see Defining the RCS Settings on page 73).
- 14. If you selected the **Generate storage key** option you must create a backup of the storage encryption key that the installer created and installed automatically. You can export this encryption key to a file, as described in the procedure in Moving the RCS to a Different Computer on page 54

## 3.8 User Permissions Required to Access the RCS

Configuration methods that use the RCS require these users to have permissions to connect to the RCS:

- The user account running the Configurator
- All users that want to use the Console

If a user has administrator permissions on the computer running the RCS they will be able to connect to the RCS. Users with administrator permissions can use all the options available in the Console. If you do not want to give a user administrator permissions you can do these procedures instead:

- Defining DCOM Permissions below
- Defining WMI Permissions on page 49

### **3.8.1 Defining DCOM Permissions**

This procedure describes how to define DCOM permissions.

### To define DCOM permissions:

- On the computer running the RCS open a command prompt window, enter dcomcnfg and press <Enter>. The Component Services window opens.
- 2. From the Console Root tree, select **Component Services > Computers > My Computer**.
- 3. Right-click **My Computer** and select **Properties**. The My Computer Properties window opens.
- 4. Click the **COM Security** tab. The COM Security tab opens.

My Comp	uter Propertie	5			? ×
G	eneral	Options		Default Properties	
De	efault Protocols	MSDTC		COM Security	
Acce	ess Permissions -				
Yo ak	ou may edit who is so set limits on ap	s allowed default acc plications that determ	ess to nine th	o applications. You maj neir own permissions.	y
		E dit <u>L</u> imits		Edit Default	
⊤Laur	ich and Activatio	n Permissions			_
Yo ac de	ou may edit who i tivate objects. Yo termine their own	s allowed by default t ou may also set limits n permissions.	o laur on ap	nch applications or oplications that	
		E dit Limits		Edit <u>D</u> efault	]

Figure 3-8: COM Security Tab

- 5. From the Access Permissions section:
  - a. Click Edit Limits. The Access Permission window opens.
  - b. Make sure that all users that need to connect to the RCS appear in the list and have the Local Access and Remote Access permissions.
  - c. Click **OK**. The Access Permission window closes.
- 6. From the Launch and Activate Permissions section:
  - a. Click **Edit Limits**. The Launch Permission window opens.
  - b. Make sure that all users that need to connect to the RCS appear in the list and have these permissions: Local Launch, Remote Launch, Local Activation, and Remote Activation.
  - c. Click **OK**. The Launch Permission window closes.
- 7. Click **OK**. The My Computer Properties window closes.
- 8. From the Console Root tree, select **Component Services > Computers > My Computer > DCOM Config > RCSServer**.
- 9. Right-click RCSServer and select Properties. The RCSServer Properties window opens.
- 10. Click the **Security** tab. The Security tab opens.
- 11. From the Configuration Permissions section:
  - a. Select **Customize** and click **Edit**. The Change Configuration Permission window opens.
  - b. Make sure that all users that need to connect to the RCS appear in the list and have the Full Control and Read permissions.
  - c. Click **OK**. The Change Configuration Permission window closes.
  - d. Click **OK**. RCSServer Properties window closes.
- 12. Close the Component Services window.

### 3.8.2 Defining WMI Permissions

Intel SCS includes four namespaces that control access to the RCS:

- Intel\_RCS Give permissions to this namespace to users who need to do operations on Intel AMT systems using the RCS. The user account running the Configurator needs permissions on this namespace.
- Intel\_RCS\_Editor Give permissions to this namespace to users who need to connect to the RCS to define profiles or settings in the RCS. It is recommended to give permissions to this namespace only to users who are "administrators".
- Intel\_RCS\_Master\_Password Give permissions to this namespace to users who need to use the RCS to calculate or get the Digest Master Password.
- Intel\_RCS\_Systems Give permissions to this namespace to users who need to use the monitoring options of the RCS (in database mode).

For each namespace, these are the necessary WMI permissions:

- Execute Methods
- Full Write
- Remote Enable

(These permissions are set in the Security tab of the WMI Control (Local) Properties window.)

Intel SCS includes a utility that you can use to give these permissions to the relevant user and group accounts. The RCS Utility (RCSUtils.exe) is located in the Utils folder.

Example #1: Adding a user named "MyUser" to the Intel RCS namespace only:

RCSutils.exe /Permissions Add MyUser

**Example #2:** Adding a user to all the RCS namespaces:

RCSUtils.exe /Permissions Add MyUser /RCSNamespace All

#### Vote:

You must run the RCS Utility on the computer where the RCS is installed and running. The local user account running the RCS Utility must have administrator permissions on the computer. On operating systems with User Account Control (UAC), the utility must be "Run as administrator". For more information, refer to the Intel (R) SCS RCSUtility.pdf also located in the Utils folder.

## 3.9 Backing up Data

The type of installation you selected causes the RCS to store data in files or in an SQL database. If one of the data files or database tables is damaged or missing, the RCS cannot operate correctly. Thus, it is important to make a regular backup. (If you need to restore data from a backup, make sure that you stop the RCS first. After the data is restored, restart the RCS.)

If you installed RCS in:

- Database Mode Schedule a regular backup of the database in SQL Server.
- Non-Database Mode Make regular backups of the data files and store them in a secure location. You can use any backup method or application that will let you recover the data files when necessary. In non-database mode, the data used by the RCS is kept in these encrypted files:
  - Profile.xml The configuration profiles
  - PSKsStorage.dat PSK keys (for the One-Touch Configuration method)
  - DMP.dat Digest Master Passwords. This file only exists if at some time the RCS was set to use the Digest Master Password option (see Security Settings Tab on page 76).

The data files of non-database mode are stored in a folder named RCSConfServer in the user profile directory of the account running the RCS. The location of the folder depends on the version of the operating system:

- Windows 5.x: Documents and Settings\Username\Local Settings\Application Data\Intel\_Corporation
- Windows 6.x: Users\Username\AppData\Local\Intel\_Corporation

If you install the RCS with the Network Service account:

• Windows 5.x: Documents and Settings\NetworkService\Local Settings\Application Data\Intel\_ Corporation

(In Windows explorer, the user profile directory of the Network Service account remains hidden even if you select to show all hidden files and folders. If you want to view this directory you must specifically type the name networkservice in the explorer.)

• Windows 6.x: Windows\ServiceProfiles\NetworkService\AppData\Local\Intel\_Corporation

### 3.9.1 Location of RCS Log Files

The log files of the RCS are located in a folder named RCSConfServer in one of these hidden locations:

- ProgramData\Intel\_Corporation
- Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Intel\_Corporation

The log file is named RCSLog.log and records all operations and actions done by the RCS. Each time the log file becomes too large, or the RCS is restarted, the file content is moved to a new file with this format: RCSLog.logYYYY-MM-DD-HH-MI-SS.log.

## 3.10 Modifying an Existing Installation

This section describes how to modify an existing installation.

## 3.10.1 Removing/Adding Components

This procedure describes how remove or add components to an existing installation.

### To add/remove components:

1. Double-click IntelSCSInstaller.exe.

#### **Note:**

You can also modify/uninstall from the Add or Remove Programs option of the Control Panel.

The Welcome window opens.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer	×
Welcome	(intel)
Welcome to the Intel® Setup and Configuration Software (Intel® SCS) in The installer has detected that at least one Intel SCS component is alread on this computer. Select one of these options:	nstaller. Iy installed
<ul> <li>Add or remove components</li> <li>Remove all components</li> </ul>	

Figure 3-9: Welcome Window

- 2. Select one of these:
  - Add or remove components Lets you make changes to an existing installation. Continue to step 3.
  - **Remove all components** Removes all Intel SCS components installed on this computer. Continue to step 5.

3. Click **Next**. The Modify Components window opens.



- 4. Select the modifications that you want to make:
  - In the Install section, select only the check boxes of the components that you want to install.
  - In the Remove section, select only the check boxes of the components that you want to uninstall.

5. Click **Next**. The Storage Key Extraction window opens. (This window is only shown if you are uninstalling the RCS.) This window lets you extract and save a copy of the encryption key that was used by the RCS to encrypt data. It is highly recommended to extract and save this key in a secure location.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer	X
Storage Key Extraction	(intel)
It is highly recommended to extract and save a copy of the storage was used by the RCS to encrypt data. If you uninstall without savin will be deleted and cannot be recovered. Without this key, it is not the data.	encryption key that g the key, the key possible to access
Extract key and save to file	
Encryption Key File:	Browse
File Password:	
Confirm Password:	

Figure 3-11: Storage Key Extraction Window

- a. In the Encryption Key File field, enter a name for the key file. It is recommended to save the file with a . key extension. By default, the file is created in the folder where the installer is located. Alternatively you can click **Browse** to select a folder and filename.
- b. In the Password fields enter a password that will be used to encrypt the file. For the required format, see Password Format on page 9.
- 6. Click **Next** to continue to the Confirmation window. (If you selected to install the RCS, additional windows open. Supply the necessary data in each window.)
- 7. (Optional) By default, when uninstalling the RCS, the log files are not deleted. If you want to delete the log files, select the **Delete the RCS log files** check box. Selecting this check box will delete all files with a .log extension that exist in the root of the RCSConfServer folder. (Log files in any existing sub folders, created by the CA plugin for example, are not deleted.)
- 8. Click **Modify** (or **Remove** if you are only uninstalling). A window opens showing the progress of the changes that you selected. When complete, a message is shown.
- 9. Click **Next**. The Completed Successfully window opens.
- 10. Click **Finish**. The installer closes.

## 3.10.2 Changing the Database

During installation of the RCS (in database mode), the RCS is configured to connect to a specific SQL database. After installation it is possible to reconfigure the RCS to connect to a different database. This is done using the Console.

To change the database connection of the RCS:

- 1. Make sure that you know the exact name of the replacement database and have the Storage Encryption Key file (and file password) for that database.
- 2. In the Console, select **Tools** > **Settings** > **Storage**. The Storage tab opens.
- 3. In the Storage Settings section, specify the database server name and the name of the replacement database. It is also possible to change the type of authentication that the RCS will use.
- 4. In the Storage Security section, click **Import**. The Open window opens.
- 5. Select the Storage Encryption Key file and click **Open**. The Enter Passphrase window opens.
- 6. Enter the password that was used to encrypt the key file and click **OK**.
- 7. Click **OK** and then **Yes** to confirm that you want to restart the RCS and apply the changes you have defined. The Settings window closes.
- 8. Select **Tools** > **Refresh**. The Console and the RCS are now connected to the replacement database.

## 3.10.3 Moving the RCS to a Different Computer

Some of the data used by the RCS is sensitive (for example, passwords). To protect this data, the RCS encrypts sensitive data before storing it in the SQL database (database mode) or data files (non-database mode). The data is encrypted using an encryption key. If you want to move the RCS to a different computer, you must supply the key when installing the RCS.

These are the required steps:

- 1. Make sure that you have the Storage Encryption Key file (and file password) for that database. If you do not have the key file, you can export it.
- 2. Install the RCS on the target computer. During installation, select the key file in the Storage Encryption Key window of the installer.

### To export the encryption key:

- 1. In the Console, select **Tools** > **Settings** > **Storage**. The Storage tab opens.
- 2. In the Storage Security section, click **Export**. The Save As window opens.
- By default, the name of the exported key is RCSStorage.key. You can change this name if you want. Specify the location where you want to save the key file and click Save. The Enter Passphrase window opens.
- 4. Enter a password that will be used to encrypt the certificate file and click **OK**.
- 5. Click **OK** to close the Settings window. Make sure that you keep this key file and password in a secure location.

### 3.10.4 Deleting the Database

The installer does not uninstall the database. If you are sure that you want to delete an Intel SCS database, and lose all data that it contains, you can use the DeleteDB command of the Database Tool.

This is the syntax and parameters for the DeleteDB command:

DatabaseTool.exe DeleteDB DBServer=<DB server> DBName=<DB name>

[Username=<SQL Login ID> Password=<SQL password>]

DBServer=	The name (FQDN) or IP address of the SQL Server
DBName=	The name of the database that you want to delete
Username=	By default, the credentials of the user account running the Database Tool are used to authenticate with SQL Server. If you want the Database Tool to use SQL Server authentication instead, use this parameter to supply the Login ID.
Password=	The password of the SQL Server account (only necessary if the user was supplied in the Username= parameter)

### **Examples**

### Example #1: Deleting a database on the local SQL Server:

DatabaseTool.exe DeleteDB DBServer=(local) DBName=TestDB

#### Example #2: Deleting a database on a remote SQL Server

DatabaseTool.exe DeleteDB DBServer=192.168.1.10 DBName=TestDB

#### Example #3: Deleting a database using SQL Server authentication:

DatabaseTool.exe DeleteDB DBServer=192.168.1.10 DBName=TestDB Username=MySQLUser Password=P@ssw0rd

## 3.11 Upgrading Intel SCS

You can only use the Intel SCS 9.1 installer (IntelSCSInstaller.exe) to upgrade from these versions:

- Intel SCS 8.0, 8.1, 8.2
- Intel SCS 9.0

The installation will be upgraded to the same mode (database/non-database). You cannot use the installer to change modes.

To upgrade from any Intel SCS version earlier than version 8.0, you must first upgrade to version 8.2. To do this you will need to use the migration tool located in the RCS\Migration\_Tool folder of the Intel SCS 8.2 download package. After upgrading to version 8.2, you can then use the Intel SCS 9.1 installer to upgrade to Intel SCS 9.1.

Upgrade of Intel SCS to version 9.1 means that you must upgrade all installed instances of the Console, RCS, and the Intel SCS data. In addition, you also need to replace the executable files of the other Intel SCS components that you use with the version 9.1 executables. (The Intel SCS 8.x and 9.0 versions of the Configurator will work with Intel SCS 9.1 components, but it is recommended to use the Intel SCS 9.1 version instead.)

## 3.11.1 Before Starting the Upgrade

In a production environment, the upgrade process requires some preparation and planning. This is because when upgrading the RCS and the Intel SCS data, you need to select a time when you can safely stop the RCS.

### Before starting the upgrade process it is highly recommended to:

- 1. Plan for the upgrade by selecting a time when very few configuration requests will be sent to the RCS. In your software deployment mechanism, cancel or delay deployment packages that include maintenance or configuration requests that will be sent to the RCS.
- 2. In database mode, make sure that no jobs will be running during the upgrade.
- 3. When you are ready to start the upgrade, stop and disable the RCS. To do this, stop the Windows service named RCSServer and change the Startup Type to "Disabled". If you do not disable the RCS, any configuration requests that are received during the upgrade process might cause the upgrade to fail and even corrupt the existing data.
- 4. Make a full backup of the Intel SCS data:
  - In database mode, make a full backup in SQL Server
  - In non-database mode, refer to the User Guide of the version of Intel SCS that is currently installed

### **Note:**

The upgrade process does not include a "rollback" process. If the upgrade fails and the data is corrupted the only way to recover is by restoring a full backup of the original data.

### 3.11.2 Upgrading Non-Database Mode

This procedure describes how to upgrade non-database mode of Intel SCS.

```
To upgrade non-database mode of Intel SCS:
```

- 1. Make sure that you have made a full backup and disabled the RCS (see Before Starting the Upgrade on the previous page).
- 2. Double-click IntelSCSInstaller.exe. The Welcome window opens.

7	N	0	t.		•
-		U	L	C	•

This window shows the currently installed components that the installer will upgrade on this computer. If you want to add a component, run the installer again after upgrade is complete.

- 3. Click **Next**. The License Agreement window opens.
- 4. Select **I accept the terms of the license agreement** and click **Next**. The RCS User Account window opens.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer		×
RCS User Account		(intel)
Username: EXAMPLE\Administrator Password:	Y	

Figure 3-12: RCS User Account Window

5. Supply the password of the user account under which the RCS runs on this computer. (The Network Service account does not require a password.)

6. Click **Next**. If the installer detects that the RCS has not been disabled, the Disable RCS window opens.



Figure 3-13: Disable RCS Window

If this window is shown, you can either:

• Manually stop the Windows service named "RCSServer" and change the Startup Type to "Disabled". (It is not necessary to close the installer.)

-OR-

• Click **Disable RCS** to let the installer attempt to stop and then disable the RCS.

When the installer detects that the RCS is disabled a message is shown and the Next button is enabled.

- 7. Do one of these:
  - If you are upgrading from version 8.x, continue from step 8.
  - If you are upgrading from version 9.0, continue from step 10.

8. Click **Next**. The Storage Encryption Key window opens. This window installs the encryption key for the RCS (version 9.1) to use when accessing the data files.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer	×
Storage Encryption Key	(intel)
Data stored by the RCS is encrypted using a storage encryption key. This key installed on the computer running the RCS.	/ must be
Generate Storage Key file	
O Load and install the key from this file:	
Encryption Key File: Bro	wse
File Password:	
	I

Figure 3-14: Storage Encryption Key Window

- 9. Select one of these:
  - Generate storage key file Select this option to automatically create and install the storage encryption key.
  - Load and install the key from this file You can select this option if you already have a storage encryption key created by Intel (for example, you already upgraded an RCS on another computer). If you select this option, click **Browse** and select the storage encryption key file. In the File Password field you must also enter the password that was used to encrypt the key file.
- 10. Click **Next**. The Confirmation window opens. This window shows the location of the installation folder.

#### **Note:**

If the previous version was installed in the default location, version 9.1 will be installed in the default location (C:\Program Files\Intel\SCS9). If not, version 9.1 will be installed in the same folder in which you installed the previous version of Intel SCS.

- 11. Click **Upgrade**. The upgrade starts and the Upgrade Progress window opens. When the upgrade finishes the Next button is enabled.
- 12. Click **Next**. A window opens with information about the success or failure of the upgrade.
- 13. Click **Finish**. The installer closes.

## 3.11.3 Upgrading Database Mode

This section describes how to upgrade database mode.

#### Z Note:

Before starting the upgrade process, see Before Starting the Upgrade on page 56.

### 3.11.3.1 Upgrading the Database

In many organizations, the company databases are managed by a database administrator (DBA). The DBA (or you) can use the Database Tool, located in the RCS folder, to upgrade the database. The Database Tool (DatabaseTool.exe) is a simple CLI that you can use locally on the SQL Server or remotely.

#### Vote:

When complete, the UpgradeDB command creates a storage encryption key file. The file is encrypted with a password that is printed to the screen in the CLI output of the command. Make sure that you save this file and password in a secure location. You will need them later.

This is the syntax and parameters for the UpgradeDB command:

DatabaseTool.exe UpgradeDB /RCSisDisabled DBServer=<DB server>

DBName=<DB name> [Username=<SQL Login ID> Password=<SQL password>]

[KeyFileName=<filename>]

/RCSisDisabled	This parameter is mandatory and exists to remind you that you must disable the RCS before using the <code>UpgradeDB</code> command
DBServer=	The name (FQDN) or IP address of the SQL Server
DBName=	The name of the database
Username=	By default, the credentials of the user account running the Database Tool are used to authenticate with SQL Server. If you want the Database Tool to use SQL Server authentication instead, use this parameter to supply the Login ID.
Password=	The password of the SQL Server account (only necessary if the user was supplied in the Username parameter)
KeyFileName=	By default, the Database Tool creates an encryption key file named RCSStorage.key in the folder where the Database Tool is located. You can use this parameter to supply an alternative path and filename.

### **Examples**

Example #1: Upgrading a database on the local SQL Server:

DatabaseTool.exe UpgradeDB DBServer=(local) DBName=TestDB

#### Example #2: Upgrading a database on a remote SQL Server:

DatabaseTool.exe UpgradeDB DBServer=192.168.1.10 DBName=TestDB

#### Example #3: Upgrading a database using SQL Server authentication:

DatabaseTool.exe UpgradeDB DBServer=192.168.1.10 DBName=TestDB Username=MySQLUser Password=P@ssw0rd

### 3.11.3.2 Upgrading the RCS and Console

This procedure describes how to upgrade database mode of Intel SCS.

#### To upgrade database mode of Intel SCS:

- 1. Make sure that you have made a full backup and disabled the RCS (see Before Starting the Upgrade on page 56).
- 2. Double-click IntelSCSInstaller.exe. The Welcome window opens.

#### **Note:**

This window shows the currently installed components that the installer will upgrade on this computer. If you want to add a component, run the installer again after upgrade is complete.

- 3. Click **Next**. The License Agreement window opens.
- 4. Select **I accept the terms of the license agreement** and click **Next**. The RCS User Account window opens.

🛃 Intel® SCS Installer		×
RCS User Account		(intel)
Username: EXAMPLE\Administrator Password:	<b>v</b>	

Figure 3-15: RCS User Account Window

5. Supply the password of the user account under which the RCS runs on this computer. (The Network Service account does not require a password.)

6. Click **Next**. If the installer detects that the RCS has not been stopped and disabled, the Disable RCS window opens.

Tintel® SCS Installer
Disable RCS
The installer has detected that the RCS is not disabled.
Before starting the upgrade process you must stop and disable the RCS. To do this you can:
<ul> <li>Manually stop the Windows service named "RCSServer" and change the</li> <li>Startup Type to "Disabled".</li> </ul>
- OR -
Click Disable RCS to let the installer attempt to stop and then disable the RCS.
Disable RCS
Figure 3-16: Disable RCS Window

If this window is shown, you can either:

• Manually stop the Windows service named "RCSServer" and change the Startup Type to "Disabled". (It is not necessary to close the installer.)

-OR-

• Click **Disable RCS** to let the installer attempt to stop and then disable the RCS.

When the installer detects that the RCS is disabled a message is shown and the Next button is enabled.

7. Click **Next**. The Database Settings window opens. This window shows the location of the database that will be upgraded.

🛃 Intel® SCS Installer	×
Database Settings	(intel)
This is the database to which this RCS is connected:	
SQL Server: (local)\SQL	
Database Name: IntelSCS	
Specify how the RCS will authenticate with the database: (1)	
Windows Authentication (using account: EXAMPLE\administrator)	
O SQL Server Authentication	
Login ID:	
Password:	

Figure 3-17: Database Settings Window

- 8. Specify the authentication method that the RCS (version 9.1) will use after upgrade:
  - Windows Authentication
  - **SQL Server Authentication** If you select this option, enter the Login ID and the password of the SQL Server account. The account that you specify MUST have a password. SQL Server authentication using an account without a password is not supported.

For more information, see RCS User Permissions in SQL Server on page 37.

- 9. Click **Next**. The installer connects to the database and checks the database version:
  - If you have not upgraded the database, continue from step 10.
  - If you have already upgraded the database, continue from step 11.
- 10. If the database has not already been upgraded, the Upgrade Intel SCS Database window opens. If you want the installer to do the upgrade now:
  - a. Click **Upgrade Database** and wait for the database upgrade to complete.
  - b. When complete, click **Close** to close the Upgrade Intel SCS Database and then continue from step 12.

11. If the database has already been upgraded to version 9.1, the Storage Encryption Key window opens.

### **Note:**

During upgrade from version 9.0, this window is not shown. The existing storage key that was installed for version 9.0 will be used by version 9.1.

🚮 Intel® SCS Installer	×
Storage Encryption Key	(intel)
Data stored by the RCS is encrypted using a storage encryption key. This is installed on the computer running the RCS.	key must be
Load and install the key from this file:	
Encryption Key File: File Password:	rowse

Figure 3-18: Storage Encryption Key Window

- a. Click **Browse** and select the storage encryption key file that was created when the database was upgraded (by the Database Tool). In the File Password field you must also enter the password that was used to encrypt the key file.
- b. Continue from step 12.
- 12. Click **Next**. The Confirmation window opens. This window shows the location of the installation folder.

### Vote:

If the previous version was installed in the default location, version 9.1 will be installed in the default location (C:\Program Files\Intel\SCS9). If not, version 9.1 will be installed in the same folder in which you installed the previous version of Intel SCS.

- 13. Click **Upgrade**. The upgrade starts and the Upgrade Progress window opens. When the upgrade finishes the Next button is enabled.
- 14. Click **Next**. A window opens with information about the success or failure of the upgrade.
- 15. Click **Finish**. The installer closes.

## 3.12 Silent Installation

Intel SCS includes an additional installation file (IntelSCSInstaller.msi). This file is based on the Windows Installer CLI and uses the commands available in the standard installation mode. You can use this file to silently install/upgrade the RCS and the Console using a script.

Vote:

The Windows Installer CLI is case-sensitive.

This table describes the options available.

Command/Property	Description				
/qn	Install silently				
/l*v	Create a verbose log file where <filename> is the name of the log file</filename>				
You must supply one of these commands:					
ADDLOCAL=	Install the component(s). Valid values:				
	All – RCS and Console				
	• Service – RCS only				
	Console – Console only				
REMOVE=	Uninstall the component(s). Valid values:				
	All – RCS and Console				
	• Service – RCS only				
	Console – Console only				
UPGRADE=	Upgrade the installed components (RCS/Console) from version 8.x to version 9.1. Valid values:				
	• <b>1</b> – Upgrade the components				
	Note:				
	<ul> <li>Required only for upgrades of version 8.x. (For upgrade of version 9.0, see Example #7: Upgrading version 9.0: on page 68)</li> </ul>				
	• Before using this command, make sure that you understand the upgrade process and prerequisites (see Upgrading Intel SCS on page 56)				
	In non-database mode, this command will also upgrade the data files				
	• In database mode this command only upgrades the RCS and the Console. Before you can use this command to upgrade database mode, you must first upgrade the database (see Upgrading the Database on page 60).				
Command/Property	Description				
--	--	--	--	--	--
If installing/upgrading the RCS, you must define these properties:					
LOGON_USERNAME=	The user under which the RCS will run, in the format Domain\Username. In a Windows Workgroup, enter the username in the format ComputerName\Username. If you want to use the Network Service account, supply only the username: NetworkService. <b>Note:</b> If upgrading, you must supply the credentials of the user account that was used to run the RCS of version 8.x.				
LOGON_PASSWORD=	The password of the RCS user. Do not supply this property if you are using the Network Service account.				
DB_MODE=	<ul> <li>The database mode. Valid values:</li> <li>0 - Non-database mode</li> <li>1 - Database mode</li> <li>Note: If upgrading, do not supply this property.</li> </ul>				
STORAGE_KEY_FILE=	The full path to the encryption key file used to encrypt the data stored and used by Intel SCS (see About the Storage Key File on the next page)				
STORAGE_KEY_FILE_ PASSWORD=	The password of the encryption key file				
If installing the RCS in databa	se mode, you must also define these properties:				
SQL_SERVER=	The name of the SQL Server where the Intel SCS database is installed				
DB_NAME=	The name of the Intel SCS database exactly as it is defined in the SQL Server				
By default, the RCS is configured to use Windows authentication to connect to the database. If you prefer to use SQL Server authentication, define these properties:					
SERVICE_SQL_USER=	The Login ID on the SQL Server				
SERVICE_SQL_PASSWORD=	The password on the SQL Server				
These are additional (optional)	) parameters you can use when installing (not upgrading):				
INSTALLDIR=	The default installation folder is: C:\Program Files\Intel\SCS9. If you want to change this location, use this property and supply the full path to the installation folder.				

Command/Property	Description
WMI_ADMIN_ACCOUNT=	You can use these properties to give WMI permissions on the RCS namespaces to the user accounts (or groups) that you specify. Each property gives permissions on different namespaces:
	• WMI_ADMIN_ACCOUNT - Gives permissions to all the namespaces that control access to the RCS (see Defining WMI Permissions on page 49). It is recommended to use this property only for user accounts who are "administrators".
	• WMI_ACCESS_ACCOUNT - Gives permissions only to the Intel_RCS namespace.
	You can specify the accounts by supplying the Security Identifier (SID) or the username, in this format: domain\username. To specify multiple user accounts, separate each user account with a semi-colon (;).
WMI_ACCESS_ACCOUNT=	Examples: WMI_ACCESS_ACCOUNT=example\myuser1;example\myuser2 WMI_ADMIN_ACCOUNT=S-1-5-21-725345543-602162358- 527237240-205384;example\myuser2
	Note:
	• In addition to WMI permissions, the user accounts will also automatically be given the DCOM permissions necessary to connect to the RCS. If the user accounts did not have any DCOM permissions on the computer running the RCS, you will need to restart the computer. (This is because of a Microsoft limitation the first time that a user account is granted DCOM permissions on a computer.)
	<ul> <li>When using these properties, any existing default or specific WMI permissions of users/groups on these namespaces are replaced.</li> </ul>

#### About the Storage Key File

When using the silent install option to install the RCS, you must supply the storage key file in the STORAGE\_ KEY\_FILE= property. This file is created using the Database Tool (DatabaseTool.exe), located in the RCS folder. The command that you need to use depends on the type of installation:

- **Database mode** The file is created when you create the database using the CreateDB command (see Creating the Database on page 37).
- Non-database mode Use the CreateStorageKey command. For more information, refer to the CLI help of the Database Tool.

#### **Examples**

#### Example #1: Installing database mode using Windows authentication:

IntelSCSInstaller.msi /qn /l\*v log.txt ADDLOCAL=All LOGON\_USERNAME=Example\RCSUser LOGON\_PASSWORD="P@ssw0rd" DB\_MODE=1 STORAGE\_KEY\_FILE=RCSStorage.key STORAGE\_KEY\_FILE\_PASSWORD="FileP@ssw0rd" SQL SERVER=sq12003.example.com DB NAME=IntelSCS

#### Example #2: Installing database mode using SQL Server authentication:

IntelSCSInstaller.msi /qn /l\*v log.txt ADDLOCAL=All LOGON\_USERNAME=Example\RCSUser LOGON\_PASSWORD="P@ssw0rd" DB\_MODE=1 STORAGE\_KEY\_FILE=RCSStorage.key STORAGE\_KEY\_FILE\_PASSWORD="FileP@ssw0rd" SQL\_SERVER=sq12003.example.com DB\_NAME=IntelSCS SERVICE\_SQL\_USER=sa SERVICE SQL PASSWORD="MySQLP@ssw0rd"

#### Example #3: Uninstalling the RCS and the Console:

IntelSCSInstaller.msi /qn /l\*v log.txt REMOVE=All

#### Example #4: Installing non-database mode:

IntelSCSInstaller.msi /qn /l\*v log.txt ADDLOCAL=All LOGON\_USERNAME=Example\RCSUser LOGON\_PASSWORD="P@ssw0rd" DB\_MODE=0 STORAGE\_KEY\_FILE=RCSStorage.key STORAGE\_KEY\_FILE\_PASSWORD="FileP@ssw0rd"

#### Example #5: Upgrading version 8.x using Windows authentication:

IntelSCSInstaller.msi /qn /l\*v log.txt UPGRADE=1
LOGON\_USERNAME=Example\RCSUser LOGON\_PASSWORD="P@ssw0rd"
STORAGE\_KEY\_FILE=RCSStorage.key STORAGE\_KEY\_FILE\_PASSWORD="FileP@ssw0rd"

#### Example #6: Upgrading version 8.x using SQL Server authentication:

IntelSCSInstaller.msi /qn /l\*v log.txt UPGRADE=1 LOGON\_USERNAME=Example\RCSUser LOGON\_PASSWORD="P@ssw0rd" STORAGE\_KEY\_FILE=RCSStorage.key STORAGE\_KEY\_FILE\_PASSWORD="FileP@ssw0rd" SERVICE\_SQL\_USER=sa SERVICE\_SQL\_PASSWORD="MySQLP@ssw0rd"

#### Example #7: Upgrading version 9.0:

msiexec /fvos IntelSCSInstaller.msi

## **Chapter 4**

## Using the Console

This chapter describes how to use the Intel SCS Console.

For more information, see:

4.1	About the Console	.70
4.2	Connecting to the RCS	.72
4.3	Defining the RCS Settings.	.73
4.4	Creating Configuration Profiles	78
4.5	Exporting Profiles from the Console	. 79
4.6	Defining Manual Configuration (Multiple Systems)	.81
4.7	Importing PSK Keys from a File	. 83

## 4.1 About the Console

The Console is the user interface to the RCS. The Console can be installed on the same computer as the RCS, or any other computer that can connect to the RCS. When the Console connects to the RCS, the database mode of the RCS defines which options are available from the Console.

#### Non-Database Mode:

🚮 Intel® SCS Console					<u>- I ×</u>
Profiles	Monitoring	*	Tools	v	0
	Export to XML	_			
Profiles	Profile Details				
Intel AMT Profile1 Profile2	Profile Name: Profile1 Profile Type: Intel AMT				
	Network Settings FQDN will be the same as the Primary DNS FQDN IP will be taken from DHCP Network Configuration				
	WIFI Do not enable synchronization of Intel® AMT with host platform WiFi profiles				

#### Database Mode:

🚮 Intel® SCS Console					
		*	Tools	Y	0
	Export to XML		_	-	
Profiles Intel AMT Profile1 Profile2	Profile Details Profile Name: Profile1 Profile Type: Intel AMT Network Settings FQDN will be the same as the Primary DNS FQDN IP will be taken from DHCP Network Configuration WiFi Do not enable synchronization of Intel® AMT with host platform WiFi profiles				
☑ Note:					

Each window of the Console includes context sensitive help that shows when you press F1 or click the help icon.

Table 4-1: This table describes the options available from the Console.

Click	To do this
Profiles	To work with profiles when in database mode. When selected, this button has a green background.
•=	Create a new profile (see Creating Configuration Profiles on page 78)
	Duplicate the profile selected in the left pane
*=	Delete the profile(s) selected in the left pane. <b>Note:</b> Make sure that you do not delete a profile that is currently being used (see About Deleting and Modifying Profiles on page 85).
	Edit the profile selected in the left pane
Export to XML	<ul> <li>Export a profile to an XML file to use with unified configuration. For more information, see:</li> <li>Exporting Profiles from the Console on page 79</li> <li>Unified Configuration Process on page 7</li> </ul>
Monitoring	<ul> <li>Use the monitoring options available in database mode. When selected, this button has a green background. For more information, see:</li> <li>Monitoring Systems on page 161</li> <li>Managing Jobs and Operations on page 180</li> </ul>
🗙 Tools 🔻	<ul> <li>For information about the options included in the Tools menu, see:</li> <li>Connecting to the RCS on the next page</li> <li>Defining the RCS Settings on page 73</li> <li>Importing PSK Keys from a File on page 83</li> <li>Defining Manual Configuration (Multiple Systems) on page 81</li> </ul>

## 4.2 Connecting to the RCS

If you install the Console on a computer where RCS is running, the Console is automatically set to connect to the RCS on that computer. You can also install the Console on other computers in the network and then select to which RCS to connect.

You can change this setting at any time for each Console you install.

#### To define the service location for the Console:

1. In the Console, select **Tools** > **Connect to a different RCS**. The Connect to RCS window opens.

🔂 Connect to RCS	
Specify the location of the Remote Configuration Service (RCS):  Connect to the RCS running on this computer  Connect to the RCS on a remote computer  Computer name \IP:  Login as current user  Username:  Password:	
	el

Figure 4-1: Connect to RCS Window

- 2. Select one of these:
  - **Connect to the RCS running on this compute**r If the RCS to which you want to connect is installed on this computer, make sure that it is running and then select this option. The next time you start the Console on this computer the Console will automatically connect to the RCS.
  - Connect to the RCS on a remote computer Select this option if the RCS runs on a different computer in the network. Enter the name of the computer running the RCS (or the IP address). The Console will login using the current user credentials. Optionally, you can clear the Login as current user check box and enter credentials of a different user.
- 3. Click **Login**. When connection is established, the Connect to RCS window closes and the Console opens.

## 4.3 Defining the RCS Settings

The RCS is installed with default settings. If necessary, you can change these settings.

# Note: Before you can change the RCS settings, the Console must be connected to the RCS (see Connecting to the RCS on the previous page).

#### To change the default RCS settings:

1. In the Console, select **Tools** > **Settings**. The Configuration Options tab of the Settings window opens.

ġ	Settings
	Configuration Options Configuration Scripts Security Settings Storage
	Network
	Timeout for connection with systems (in seconds):
	Advanced Configuration Options
	C None
	One-Time Password required
	O Support configuration triggered by Hello messages
	Hello message listener port: 9971
	Location (on server) of executable to run when receiving new Hello message:
	Cancel

Figure 4-2: Configuration Options Tab

- 2. Define the settings that you want for this RCS and click **OK**. The settings are saved and the Settings window closes. For information about these settings, see:
  - Network on the next page
  - Advanced Configuration Options on the next page
  - Configuration Scripts Tab on page 75
  - Security Settings Tab on page 76
  - Storage Tab on page 77

#### Network

The RCS communicates with the Intel AMT device using the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP). During communication, if the device does not answer within a specified time the RCS cancels the communication. This default "Timeout" setting is 10 seconds. This is usually enough time for the device to respond. To change this default, enter a new value (between 10 and 80 seconds) in this field: Timeout for connection with systems (in seconds).

#### **Note:**

A large Timeout value can cause configuration/maintenance tasks done by the RCS to take longer than usual.

#### **Advanced Configuration Options**

Select which of the advanced configuration options you want to use:

- **None** Select this option if you do not want to use any of the advanced configuration options described in this section.
- **One-Time Password required** This option is only used during Remote Configuration (using PKI) For more information, see About Remote Configuration on page 204.
- Support Configuration triggered by Hello messages Select this option only if you want the RCS to configure systems remotely using a script that you supply. For more information, see Remote Configuration Using Scripts on page 212. If you select this option:

1. Specify the TCP port that the RCS will use to listen for Hello messages from the Intel AMT systems. The minimum value for the port is 1025. The default port is 9971.

2. Specify the path to a script that will provide the required information about the Intel AMT systems. The script must be located on the computer running the RCS.

#### Vote:

If you enable or disable support for Hello messages, or change the listener port number, you must restart the RCS.

#### **Configuration Scripts Tab**

The Configuration Scripts tab lets you define scripts that the RCS will run automatically.

🛃 Settings		
Configuration Options Configuration Scripts	Security Settings	Storage
Script Details  Execute this script after configuration, reconfiguration, an  Unconfigure Intel AMT if the script fails  Execute this script before unconfiguration operations  Execute this script after unconfiguration operations	d maintenance operation	ns
These scripts must be accessible from the computer where the enter the correct path from the RCS computer to each script.	RCS is installed. Make s	sure you
Maximum time for script execution (in seconds): 60		
	ОК	Cancel

Figure 4-3: Configuration Scripts Tab

#### **Script Details**

Select the check box for each script that you want the RCS to run. You can select to run scripts:

- After configuration, reconfiguration and maintenance operations
- Before unconfiguration operations
- After unconfiguration operations

For each check box that you select, specify the full path to the script. These scripts must be accessible from the computer where the RCS is installed. Make sure that you enter the correct path from the RCS computer to each script. For more information about scripts, see Running Scripts with the Configurator/RCS on page 149. For information about the **Unconfigure Intel AMT if the script fails** check box, see What if a Failure Occurs? on page 153.

#### **Advanced Settings**

You can use these settings to change the default behavior of the RCS when running scripts:

- Maximum time for script execution (in seconds) See Script Runtime and Timeout on page 153
- Enable script authentication mechanism See Script Authentication Mechanism on page 155

#### Security Settings Tab

The Security Settings tab includes optional security related settings.



Figure 4-4: Security Settings Tab

#### **Digest Master Password**

To define the active Digest Master Password (DMP), click **Set** and enter the password. The password must be between 8-32 characters, with at least one number, one non-alphanumeric character, one lowercase Latin letter, and one uppercase Latin letter.

For increased security, change the DMP at regular intervals and then reconfigure the systems. The RCS saves the last 10 DMPs that were set in an encrypted file. If the file is full, when a new DMP is set the oldest entry is deleted.

#### 🗹 Note:

For more information about this option and when to use it, see Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device on page 15. Keep a record of each DMP you set. You might need to supply them to third-party applications.

#### **Certification Authority Plugin**

This section shows the status of the optional CA plugin, as reported by the RCS.

For more information, see Using Intel SCS with the CA Plugin on page 199.

#### Storage Tab

The Storage tab contains settings that define where the RCS stores data and how that data is encrypted.

Settings				×
ConfigurationOp	tions	Configuration Scripts	Security Settings	Storage
Storage Settings Database Server: Database Name: Authentication:	EXAMPLE IntelSCS O Windo O SQL A User Pass	\SQLSERVER	Refresh	
Storage Security				
Encryption Key	Ir	nport Export		
?			ок	Cancel

Figure 4-5: Storage Tab

#### **Storage Settings**

These settings are only shown if the RCS is in database mode. Only make changes to these settings if you want the RCS to connect to a different SQL database.

For more information, see Changing the Database on page 54.

#### **Storage Security**

The Import and Export buttons are used to import and export the encryption key. Only use these options if you want to backup the encryption key or move the RCS to a different computer.

For more information, see Moving the RCS to a Different Computer on page 54.

## 4.4 Creating Configuration Profiles

By default, Intel SCS supports configuration of Intel AMT. Intel SCS can also configure other Intel products if you supply the correct type of configuration profile. The Console supports creating configuration profiles for other Intel products by using a profile plugin. After the profile plugin for a product is installed, you can select configuration profiles for that product from the Profile Type drop-down list.

#### To define a configuration profile:

1. In the Console, click **Profiles** and then click **•**. The Profile Wizard window opens.

Ē.	Profile Wizard		
	In addition to config products included in type of profile. The options supported b Note: Additional pro installed on the com	uring Intel AMT, you can also use Intel SCS to configure other Intel your systems. Each type of product is configured using a different wizard that opens when you click OK will contain only the configuration y the selected profile type. file types are only available if the plugin for the relevant product is puter running the Console.	
	Profile Type: Profile Name: Description:	Intel AMT	
(	?	OK Car	ncel

Figure 4-6: Profile Wizard Window

- 2. From the Profile Type drop-down list, select the type of profile for the Intel product that you want to configure. (The profile type is the name of the Intel product.)
- 3. In the Profile Name field, enter a name for this profile. The profile name:
  - Can be a maximum of 32 characters
  - Cannot be empty or include only "whitespace" characters
  - Must include only 7-bit ASCII characters in the range of 32-126, not including these characters:

 $(/), ( \ ), ( : ), ( * ), ( ? ), ( < ), ( > ), ( . ), ( , ), ( & ), ( ` ), ( ` ), ( | )$ 

- 4. (Optional) In the Description field, enter a description for the profile. This field is for informational purposes only.
- 5. Click **OK**. The relevant wizard for the selected profile type opens. Continue in the wizard and define the settings that you want to configure with the profile.

## 4.5 Exporting Profiles from the Console

To use unified configuration (see Unified Configuration Process on page 7) you must export the Intel AMT profile in the Console to an XML file. You must then put this exported profile in your deployment package.

#### To export the profile:

- 1. In the Console, click **Profiles** and then select the Intel AMT profile you want to use to configure the systems.
- 2. Click **Export to XML**. The Export Profile to XML File window opens.

¢	Export Profile to XML File
	Export this profile to an XML file and use it to automatically select the configuration method (remote or host-based) supported by the Intel AMT device.
	Path to XML file: Browse
	Encrypt the XML file using this password: 🕦
	Confirm Password:
	Credentials
	If you do not want to give the user running the Configurator access to the RCS, enter the credentials of a user with the necessary permissions:
	Username:
	Password: 🗌 Show password
	Control Mode
	The default "Client Control" mode of host-based configuration includes security-related limitations. To remove this protection, you can put these devices in "Admin Control" mode.
	Put locally configured devices in Admin Control mode
	OK Cancel

Figure 4-7: Export Profile to XML File Window

- 3. In the Path to XML file field, define a name and location for the exported file.
- 4. In the Encrypt the XML file using this password field, enter a password that will be used to encrypt the profile. For information about the required format, see Password Format on page 9.



- 5. (Optional) If you enter credentials of a user in the Username and Password fields, the Configurator will use that user to communicate with the RCS. (By default, the credentials of the user running the Configurator are used.) Use this option only if you do not want to give the Configurator WMI permissions on the RCS. For more information, see User Permissions Required to Access the RCS on page 47.
- 6. If the profile includes any of these settings:
  - Active Directory (AD) Integration
  - Requesting certificates from a Certification Authority (CA)

these fields are shown in the Credentials section:

For Intel AMT 6.2 and higher systems, define which user to use when communicating with the CA and the Active Directory during configuration:		
The user running the Configurator		
O The user running the RCS		
O Use these credentials:		
Username:		
Password: Show password		

To configure AD integration, the Configurator must send a request to the AD to create an AD object for the Intel AMT system. To configure certificates via the CA, the Configurator must request the certificate from the CA.

You can define which user to use when making these requests:

- The user running the Configurator The Configurator sends the request directly to the CA/AD.
- **The user running the RCS** The Configurator sends the requests to the RCS. The RCS communicates with the CA/AD and sends the data returned by the CA/AD to the Configurator.
- **Use these credentials** The Configurator uses the supplied user credentials to send the request to the CA/AD.

## Note: These options are only applicable for Intel AMT 6.2 and higher systems. For all other systems, the

- These options are only applicable for Intel AMT 6.2 and higher systems. For all other systems, the RCS is always used to communicate with the CA/AD.
- Make sure that the user you define has the necessary permissions to communicate with the CA/AD.
- In all cases, the configuration necessary in the Intel AMT device is done locally by the Configurator (Intel AMT 6.2 and higher only).
- By default, Intel AMT 6.2 and higher devices are put in the Client Control mode (see Control Modes on page 12). If you need to remove the restrictions of Client Control mode, select **Put locally configured devices in Admin Control mode**. If you select this check box, the devices are put in Admin Control
   mode. This setting is ignored for Intel AMT versions earlier than 6.2.

## 4.6 Defining Manual Configuration (Multiple Systems)

You can prepare a USB key with identical configuration settings to use with multiple Intel AMT systems. When the systems are rebooted with the USB key, Intel AMT is configured on them.

## Note: This option is available only for systems with Intel AMT 6.0 and higher. For other Intel AMT systems you must prepare a new USB key for each system (see SMB/Manual Configuration on page 5).

• Intel SCS does not restrict the size of USB key you can use. But, the computer BIOS must fully support the selected USB key and be able to boot from it.

#### To prepare the USB key:

- 1. Put a USB key in the computer.
- 2. Select **Tools** > **Prepare a USB Key for Manual Configuration**. The Settings for Manual Configuration of Multiple Systems window opens.

🚮 Settings for Manual Configuration of Multiple Systems
Specify the type of systems for which to create the configuration USB key:
Mobile Systems     O Desktop Systems
Specify the Intel® AMT version for which to create the configuration USB key:
All systems are version 6.0 and higher     O All systems are version 7.0 and higher
Configuration Settings
The configuration settings below will be applied to Intel AMT after inserting the USB key with these definitions and rebooting the system.
Old Intel MEBX Password: 🔽 Show password
New Intel MEBX Password: 🕦
Confirm Intel MEBX Password:
Specify the system power states in which the Intel® ays On (S0-S5)
User consent required for redirection sessions
USB Drive:
Select the relevant USB drive from the list below.
USB Drive: G:\ Refresh List of USB Drives
Note: Ensure that the USB drive is supported by the system's BIOS.
OK Cancel

Figure 4-8: Settings for Manual Configuration of Multiple Systems Window

- 3. If you have mobile and desktop systems, you must prepare a different USB key for each type. This is because mobile and desktop systems have different power settings. Select the type of system that this USB key will configure:
  - Mobile Systems
  - Desktop Systems
- 4. Select the versions of Intel AMT that this USB key will configure:
  - All systems are version 6.0 and higher If selected, you can use this USB key to configure all systems that have Intel AMT 6.x and higher.
  - All systems are version 7.0 and higher If selected, you can use this USB key to configure only systems that have Intel AMT 7.x. and higher. The data in the USB key is "scrambled" so it cannot easily be read.

**Note:** 

Make sure that you keep this USB key in a secure location. The data in the USB key is NOT encrypted (even if it is "scrambled").

- 5. In the Configuration Settings section, enter the password for the Intel MEBX:
  - **Old Intel MEBX Password** Intel SCS always puts the default password of unconfigured systems ("admin") in this field. If this is not the password currently defined in the Intel MEBX, enter the correct password. If you do not supply the correct password, configuration will fail.
  - **New Intel MEBX Password** The new password to put in the Intel MEBX. For the first configuration it is mandatory to change the password. For reconfiguration you must also enter a value here, but it can be the same as the Current Password.

For information about the required format, see Password Format on page 9.

- 6. From the drop-down list, define in which power states (of the host system) the Intel AMT device will operate:
  - **Always On (S0-S5)** If the system is connected to the power supply, the Intel AMT manageability features are available in any of the system power states. This is the recommended setting.
  - Host is On (S0) The Intel AMT manageability features are available only if the operating system of the Intel AMT system is up and running.
- 7. (Optional) By default, the user consent feature is not enabled for systems configured using this configuration method (see User Consent on page 12). If you want to define that user consent is mandatory for redirection sessions, select **User consent required for redirection sessions**.
- 8. From the USB Drive drop-down list, select the drive letter of the USB key (you cannot select a USB key if you are using it to run the Console).
- 9. Click **Next**. The Formatting USB drive window opens.
- 10. Click **Yes** if you are sure you want to continue and format the USB key. After formatting completes, Intel SCS creates the configuration file on the USB key.

## 4.7 Importing PSK Keys from a File

If the manufacturer has installed PSK keys in the Intel AMT devices, you can configure them remotely. The manufacturer must supply you with a Setup.bin file containing the PSK keys that were installed in the devices. After the keys are imported into the RCS, you can use the Configurator to configure the systems remotely.

For more information, see One-Touch Configuration using PSK on page 6.

#### To import keys from a file:

- 1. Before you can import the keys into the RCS, the Console must be connected to the RCS (see Connecting to the RCS on page 72).
- 2. Select **Tools** > **Import PSK Keys from File**. The Open window opens.
- 3. Navigate to the folder where the Setup.bin file is located, select the file and click Open. The keys are imported and a message shows with details of how many keys were successfully imported.

#### Vote:

If the file contains invalid or corrupted records, the keys will not be imported. Only keys that do not exist in the RCS are imported.

## Chapter 5

## **Defining Intel AMT Profiles**

This chapter describes how to define configuration profiles for Intel AMT. The information in this section is only relevant for Intel AMT profiles.

For more information, see:

About Intel AMT Profiles	85
Creating a Configuration Profile for Intel AMT	86
Defining the Profile Scope	88
Defining Profile Optional Settings	89
Defining Active Directory Integration.	90
Defining the Access Control List (ACL).	93
Defining Home Domains	97
Defining Remote Access	98
Defining Trusted Root Certificates	102
Defining Transport Layer Security (TLS)	104
Defining Network Setups	107
Defining System Settings	116
	About Intel AMT Profiles. Creating a Configuration Profile for Intel AMT. Defining the Profile Scope. Defining Profile Optional Settings. Defining Active Directory Integration. Defining the Access Control List (ACL). Defining Home Domains. Defining Remote Access. Defining Remote Access. Defining Trusted Root Certificates. Defining Transport Layer Security (TLS). Defining Network Setups. Defining System Settings.

## 5.1 About Intel AMT Profiles

Intel AMT profiles contain the configuration settings that will be put in the Intel AMT device during configuration. These profiles can be created and used by several of the Intel SCS components. These are the main types of Intel AMT profile:

- **Console Profiles** These profiles are created and edited using the Console. The settings in these profiles are used when a configuration request is sent to the RCS.
- **Exported Profiles** These profiles are created and edited using the Console and then "Exported" to an XML format. During export, the <RCSParameters> tag is added with information about the location of the RCS. These profiles can then be used by the Configurator as part of the Unified Configuration Process on page 7.
- **Delta Profiles** A Console Profile and an Exported Profile can be a Delta Profile. After a system is configured, Delta Profiles can be used to make changes to specific settings only. Only settings defined in the profile will be changed on the systems during configuration. All other settings will stay in their current condition on the systems.

#### 📝 Note:

- The SMB/Manual Configuration method does not use configuration profiles.
- The Intel AMT Configuration Utility can also be used to create XML configuration profiles. But, the profiles can only be used to configure systems that have Intel AMT 6.2 and higher.

#### **About Deleting and Modifying Profiles**

When you configure an Intel AMT system, the system is configured with the settings that exist in the configuration profile at the time of configuration. A profile does not contain a version number. This means that:

- A profile in the Console is only a "reference". You cannot guarantee that systems configured with a profile were configured with the current settings shown in the profile.
- When a configuration request is sent to the RCS, the current settings in the profile defined in the request are used to configure the system. Configuration requests containing a profile that was deleted from the Console will fail.
- In database mode, when a job is started the selected profile (for Configuration or Maintenance operations) is loaded into memory. The operation will run on all the systems with the profile settings that existed when the job was started. The job will continue to run with these profile settings on all systems defined in the job, even if you modify or delete the profile. If the RCS crashes, the profile is reloaded into memory when the RCS restarts. After the RCS restarts, operations on the remaining systems will fail (if the profile was deleted) or use the new profile settings (if the profile was modified).

## 5.2 Creating a Configuration Profile for Intel AMT

This procedure describes how to create an Intel AMT configuration profile.

To create a configuration profile for Intel AMT:

- 1. In the Console, click **Profiles** and then click **I**. The Profile Wizard window opens.
- 2. From the Profile Type drop-down list, select **Intel AMT**.
- 3. In the Profile Name field, enter a name for this profile. The profile name:
  - Can be a maximum of 32 characters
  - Cannot be empty or include only "whitespace" characters
  - Must include only 7-bit ASCII characters in the range of 32-126, not including these characters:

 $(/), ( \ ), ( : ), ( * ), ( ? ), ( < ), ( > ), ( . ), ( , ), ( & ), ( ` ), ( ` ), ( | )$ 

- 4. (Optional) In the Description field, enter a description for the profile. This field is for informational purposes only.
- 5. Click **OK**. The Getting Started window of the Configuration Profile Wizard opens.

🛃 Configuration Profile Wizard: Pr	ofile1	
Getting Starte	d	
Getting Started Profile Scope Optional Settings AD Integration Access Control List Home Domains Remote Access Transport Layer Security Network Configuration System Settings Finish	Welcome!         This wizard creates a profile to configure multiple systems that are enabled with Intel® AMT. The profile determines the management settings of the systems. These settings will be applied to all systems configured with this profile.         This profile will be used for: <b>Configuration / Reconfiguration</b> All Intel AMT settings on the system will be set exactly as defined in this profile. <b>Delta Configuration</b> For configured systems, you can limit the profile scope so that only some Intel AMT settings will be changed. All other settings will remain in their current condition.	

Figure 5-1: Getting Started Window

- 6. Select the task for which you want to use this profile:
  - **Configuration / Reconfiguration** Systems configured using this profile will be set with the Intel AMT settings exactly as they are defined in this profile. Optional settings that are not defined in this profile will be removed from the systems during configuration.
  - **Delta Configuration** After a system is configured, you can use this option to make changes to specific settings only. Only settings defined in the Profile Scope window will be changed on the systems during configuration. All other settings will stay in their current condition on the systems.

- 7. Click **Next** to continue in the Configuration Profile Wizard and define the settings as described in these topics:
  - Defining the Profile Scope on the next page
  - Defining Profile Optional Settings on page 89
    - Defining Active Directory Integration on page 90
    - Defining the Access Control List (ACL) on page 93
    - Defining Home Domains on page 97
    - Defining Remote Access on page 98
    - Defining Transport Layer Security (TLS) on page 104
    - Defining Network Setups on page 107
  - Defining System Settings on page 116
- 8. When you have defined all the settings for this profile, the Finish window opens. Click **Finish** to save the profile.

## 5.3 Defining the Profile Scope

The Profile Scope window of the Configuration Profile Wizard lets you limit the settings that will be configured on systems when using this profile.

✓ Note:
The Profile Scope window is only shown in delta configuration profiles.

Only settings defined in the Profile Scope window will be changed on the systems during configuration. All other settings will stay in their current condition on the systems. Thus, you can use this profile:

- To configure systems without making changes to Intel AMT settings configured using third-party applications
- To make changes to specific Intel AMT settings on configured systems

🔂 Configuration Profile Wizard: Profile1		
Profile Scope		
Getting Started Profile Scope Optional Settings AD Integration Access Control List Home Domains Remote Access Transport Layer Security Network Configuration System Settings Finish	Select the settings you want to manage using this profile. Settings that are not selected here will not be changed on the systems during configuration. System Settings Management Interfaces KVM Redirection Sever Management Admin User Password Optional Settings Admin User Password Optional Settings Access Control List (ACL) Access Control List (ACL) Memote Access and Fast Call for Help Remote Access and Fast Call for Help MiFi Connection MiFi Conne	

Figure 5-2: Profile Scope Window

#### To limit the profile scope:

- 1. Select the check boxes of all the settings that you want to configure/unconfigure on the systems using this profile. Settings that are not selected will not be shown in the Configuration Profile Wizard when you continue to edit the profile.
- 2. Click **Next** to continue to the Optional Settings window.

## 5.4 Defining Profile Optional Settings

The Optional Settings window of the Configuration Profile Wizard lets you select which optional settings to configure/unconfigure in the Intel AMT device using this profile.



Figure 5-3: Profile Optional Settings Window

#### To select the optional settings:

- 1. Select the check boxes of the optional settings you want to configure using this profile. Intel SCS will remove (unconfigure) any existing settings from the Intel AMT system of options that are not selected in this window.
- 2. Click **Next** to continue in the Configuration Profile Wizard and define the configuration settings, as described in these topics:
  - Defining Active Directory Integration on the next page
  - Defining the Access Control List (ACL) on page 93
  - Defining Home Domains on page 97
  - Defining Remote Access on page 98
  - Defining Transport Layer Security (TLS) on page 104
  - Defining Network Setups on page 107

## 5.5 Defining Active Directory Integration

The Active Directory Integration window lets you integrate Intel AMT with the security infrastructure of your network's Active Directory (AD). This integration includes the ability to:

- Use Domain user accounts for Kerberos authentication with the Intel AMT device
- Use the 802.1x protocol for wired and wireless access
- Use End-Point Access Control (EAC)

Configuration Profile Wizard: Pr	ofile1	
Optional Setti	ngs: Active Directory Integration	
Getting Started Profile Scope Optional Settings <u>AD Integration</u> Access Control List Home Domains Remote Access Transport Layer Security Network Configuration System Settings Finish	Active Directory Integration         Active Directory OU:       OU=AMT,DC=example,DC=com         Always use the OS Host Name for the new AD Object         Specify any additional Security Groups for the object:         Advanced	

Figure 5-4: Active Directory Integration Window

#### To define Active Directory Integration:

• Click and select the Active Directory Organizational Unit (ADOU) where the object will be stored in AD. During configuration, Intel SCS sends a request to the AD to create a Computer object representing the Intel AMT device. The object is added to the ADOU you defined in this field.

This is the only setting that is required to activate AD integration for Intel AMT. The remaining settings in this window are optional, and can only be selected after defining the ADOU.



For more information about the remaining optional settings, see:

- Defining Additional Security Groups on the next page
- Defining Additional Object Attributes on page 92

## 5.5.1 Defining Additional Security Groups

The AD Object created for the Intel AMT device is by default automatically added to the AD Security group named "Domain Computers". If necessary, it is also possible to define additional Security groups to which the object will be added. For example, some RADIUS servers require objects to be members of a specific Security group.

To add the object to additional Security groups:

1. Next to the Specify any additional Security groups for the object field, click . The Active Directory Security Groups window opens.

Active Directory Secuity Groups	
Select the Security groups for the object and add them to the list.	
Currently selected:	
Add Remove	
ОК Са	ancel

Figure 5-5: Active Directory Security Groups Window

- 2. From the drop-down list, select a Security group and click **Add**. The group is added to the list.
- 3. If required, repeat step 2 to add additional Security groups to the list.
- 4. Click **OK**. The Active Directory Security Groups window closes.

## 5.5.2 Defining Additional Object Attributes

The object created for the Intel AMT device is automatically assigned all the attributes and values necessary for AD integration. If necessary, you can also define additional attributes and values for the AD object.



#### To define additional object attributes:

1. Click Advanced. This additional field is shown:

<u> </u>

- The Distinguished Name attribute must not be defined in this list.
- Invalid entries in this list will cause configuration to fail (the list is not validated against the AD schema).
- In the text field, define the list of attributes and values that you want to add to the object. Each line in the list must contain only one attribute, entered in the Lightweight Directory Interchange Format (LIDF) described in RFC 2849.

#### For example:

attributeName1: attributeValue1

attributeName2: attributeValue2

3. When the list is complete, click **Next** to continue. If the list contains invalid entries, an error message will show the lines with the invalid syntax.

#### **Note:**

- All the attributes in the list must exist in the AD schema, and the specified values must be valid
- The Distinguished Name attribute must NOT be defined in this list
- Invalid entries in this list will cause configuration to fail. The list is not validated against the AD schema.
- If the list includes attributes configured by Intel SCS, the value defined in the list will replace the value usually configured by Intel SCS.

## 5.6 Defining the Access Control List (ACL)

The Access Control List (ACL) window of the Configuration Profile Wizard lets you define users and their access privileges in the Intel AMT device. If you enable ACL, you must define at least one user or group, but no more than seven digest users and 32 Active Directory users/groups. User identification and realm selection must be coordinated with the requirements and instructions of third-party management consoles.

Configuration Profile Wizard: Pr	ofile1	
Optional Settin	ngs: Access Control List (ACL)	
Getting Started Profile Scope Optional Settings AD Integration Access Control List Home Domains Remote Access Transport Layer Security Network Configuration System Settings Finish	Access Control List (ACL) Use the following list to customize the level of system access for specific users or groups.	

Figure 5-6: Access Control List (ACL) Window

You can do these tasks to define the users in the ACL:

- Create a new user by clicking **Add** See Adding a User to the ACL on the next page.
- Edit an existing user by clicking **Edit**.
- Remove a user from the list by clicking **Remove**.

## 5.6.1 Adding a User to the ACL

The User/Group Details window lets you add a new user or user group to the profile's Access Control List.

#### To add a user:

1. From the Access Control List (ACL) window, click **Add**. The User/Group Details window opens.



Figure 5-7: User/Group Details Window

- 2. In the User Type section, select the required type of user:
  - Digest User Enter the username and password (see Password Format on page 9). The usernames "admin" and "administrator" are not permitted (these names are reserved for the default admin user). The username must be unique in this profile, a maximum of 16 characters, and cannot contain these characters:

( , ), ( : ), ( `` ), ( & ), ( < ), or ( > ). Usernames starting with \$\$ are not permitted.

• Active Directory User/Group – Click Browse and select the user or group.

#### Vote:

You cannot select the default user groups from the Active Directory Builtin folder. Instead, either add the required users individually or create and add a new group containing the users.

- 3. From the Access Type drop-down list, specify an access type. This parameter defines the locations from where the user is allowed to do an action. A user might be limited to local actions or might also be able to do actions from the network. Select one of these:
  - Local The user can access the Intel AMT system only via the local host.
  - **Remote** The user can execute an action only via the network.
  - **Both** The user can execute an action either locally or from the network.

4. From the Realms section, select the check boxes of the realms that you want to make available to this user. The realms define specific functional capabilities, as described in this table. Note that not all realms are available on all versions of Intel AMT.

Realm	Capabilities
Redirection	Enables and disables the redirection capability and retrieves the redirection log
PT Administration	Manages security control data such as Access Control Lists, Kerberos parameters, Transport Layer Security, Configuration parameters, power saving options, and power packages. A user with PT Administration Realm privileges has access to all realms. <b>Note:</b> If this user will be used to run the Configurator to do host-based configuration, the Access Type must be <b>Local</b> (or <b>Both</b> ).
Hardware Asset	Used to retrieve information about the hardware inventory of the Intel AMT system
Remote Control	Enables powering a system up or down remotely. Used in conjunction with the Redirection capability to boot remotely.
Storage	Used to configure, write to, and read from non-volatile user storage
Event Manager	Allows configuring hardware and software events to generate alerts
Storage Administration	Used to configure the global parameters that govern the allocation and use of non-volatile storage
Agent Presence Local	Used by an application designed to run on the local platform to report that it is running and to send heartbeats periodically
Agent Presence Remote	Used to register Local Agent applications and to specify the behavior of Intel AMT when an application is running or stops running unexpectedly
Circuit Breaker	Used to define filters, counters, and policies to monitor incoming and outgoing network traffic and to block traffic when a suspicious condition is detected (the System Defense feature)
Network Time	Used to set the clock in the Intel AMT device and synchronize it to network time
General Info	Returns general setting and status information. With this interface, it is possible to give a user permission to read parameters related to other interfaces without giving permission to change the parameters
Firmware Update	Used only by manufacturers via Intel-supplied tools to update the Intel AMT firmware

#### Table 5-1: Intel AMT Realms

Realm	Capabilities
EIT	Implements the Embedded IT service
Local User Notification	Provides alerts to a user on the local interface
Endpoint Access Control	Returns settings associated with NAC/NAP posture
Endpoint Access Control Administrator	Configures and enables the NAC/NAP posture
Event Log Reader	Allows definition of a user with privileges only to read the Intel AMT system log
Access Monitor	Allows a system auditor to monitor all events. Before assigning this realm, see Using Access Monitor below.
User Access Control	Groups several ACL management commands into a separate realm to enable users to manage their own passwords without requiring administrator privileges

### 5.6.2 Using Access Monitor

The access monitor serves as a deterrent to rogue administrator activity by tracing attempts to execute damaging actions. The feature is implemented by means of two elements: an Audit Log and a special Auditor user that you assign the Access Monitor realm. The Intel AMT system writes selected events to the Audit Log that is accessible only to the Auditor. Only the Auditor can define which events the Intel AMT system writes to the Audit Log.

You can assign the Access Monitor realm to one user only, and only that user can then relinquish it. By default, the default admin user account has access to this realm.

#### **Note:**

The Access Monitor feature is available from Intel AMT 4.0 and higher.

## 5.7 Defining Home Domains

The Home Domains window of the Configuration Profile Wizard lets you define a list of between one and five home domains. If configured, these home domains are the only domains in which access to Intel AMT is permitted. When Intel AMT detects that the systems is located outside these home domains, remote access to Intel AMT is blocked.

#### 🗹 Note:

Configuring a system with incorrect home domains might cause remote access to Intel AMT to be permanently blocked. If this occurs, it will also not be possible to remotely reconfigure Intel AMT on these systems.

Configuration Profile Wizard: Pr	ofile1	
Optional Settin	ngs: Home Domains	
Getting Started Profile Scope Optional Settings AD Integration Access Control List Home Domains Remote Access Transport Layer Security Network Configuration System Settings Finish	Home Domains List         This is an advanced configuration option and must be used with caution.         You can use this option to configure between one and five home domains in Intel® AMT. If configured, the home domains are the only domains in which access to Intel AMT is permitted. When Intel AMT detects that the system is located outside these home domains, remote access to Intel AMT is blocked.         Image: the image of the imag	

Figure 5-8: Home Domains Window

#### To define the domains:

- 1. Click Add. The Domain Properties window opens.
- 2. Enter the DNS suffix name and click **OK**. The Domain Properties window closes and the domain is added to the list of home domains.

#### Vote:

Make sure that the list of home domains contains valid home domains for all systems that will be configured with this profile.

 (Optional) To permit access to Intel AMT over a Virtual Private Network, select Allow Intel® AMT functionality via VPN. If selected, access to the Intel AMT system is permitted when it is connected over a VPN to a domain in the Home Domains list.

## **5.8 Defining Remote Access**

The remote access feature lets Intel AMT systems (versions 4.x and higher) located outside an enterprise connect to management consoles inside the enterprise network. The connection is established via a Management Presence Server (MPS) located in the DMZ of the enterprise. The MPS appears as a proxy server to management console applications. The Intel AMT device establishes a Mutual Authentication TLS tunnel with the MPS. Multiple consoles can interact with the Intel AMT device through the tunnel.

For remote access to work, the Intel AMT system must first be configured when it is inside the enterprise with the information needed to connect with the MPS.

🚮 Configuration Profile Wizard: P	rofile1	_ 🗆 🗵
Optional Setti	ings: Remote Access	
Getting Started Profile Scope Optional Settings AD Integration Access Control List Home Domains Remote Access Transport Layer Security Network Configuration System Settings Finish	Management Presence Servers         Specify at least one management presence server (MPS) to authenticate systems that are outside of the firewall.         Add         Edit         Remove    Remote Access Policy List          Specify at least one Remote Access policy to allow systems outside the firewall to connect to a management console within the network via an MPS listed above.          Add         Edit         Remove	

Figure 5-9: Remote Access Window

To define the remote access parameters, see these topics:

- Defining Management Presence Servers on the next page
- Defining Remote Access Policies on page 101

### 5.8.1 Defining Management Presence Servers

You can define up to four Management Presence Servers in a configuration profile.

#### To define a management presence server:

1. From the Management Presence Servers section of the Remote Access window, click **Add**. The Management Presence Server Properties window opens.

🚮 Management Presence Server Properties					
Detaile					
Specify the location and listening port of the MPS:					
Server FODN or IP Address: Port:	80 🚍				
Server Authentication					
The trusted root certificates used by the system to authenticate the MPS must appear in the list below.					
If they do not, use the Edit List option.					
Ed	lit List				
Common Name (CN): 🚺					
System Authentication					
<ul> <li>System authentication is certificate-based</li> </ul>					
Select the method for creating the certificate: Request certificate from Microsoft (	CA 💌				
Certificate Authority:	<b>•</b>				
Client Confifmente Terrelater					
Refresh CAs &	lemplates				
Common Names (CNs) in certificate:  O Default CNs O User-defined CNs	lit CNs				
C System authentication is password-based					
Username:					
Password: 🚯 🗖 Show	password				
	Cancel				
	Contect				

Figure 5-10: Management Presence Server Properties Window

- 2. In the Server FQDN or IP Address field, enter the FQDN or IP address of the Management Presence Server.
- 3. In the Port field, enter the Port that the Management Presence Server listens on for connections from Intel AMT systems.

- 4. Click **Edit List** to define the location of the trusted root certificates that will be used by Intel AMT systems configured with this profile (see Defining Trusted Root Certificates on page 102).
- 5. If you entered an IP address in the Server FQDN or IP Address field, you need to enter the FQDN in the Common Name field. (If you entered the FQDN in the Server FQDN or IP Address field, the Common Name field is disabled.)
- 6. Define the required type of authentication:
  - To define authentication based on a password, select **System authentication is password-based**, enter a username and password, and continue from step 9.
  - To define authentication based on certificates, select **System authentication is certificate-based**, and continue from step 7.
- 7. From the Select the method for creating the certificate drop-down list, select the source for the certificate that will be installed in the Intel AMT device:
  - **Request certificate from Microsoft CA** By default, the settings for this option are displayed. If you are using a Microsoft CA, continue from step 8.
  - **Request Certificate via CA plugin** This option is only available if you have installed the optional CA plugin. For information about this option, see Using Intel SCS with the CA Plugin on page 199. If you select this option, enter the necessary settings (as defined by the plugin provider) and continue from step 9.
- 8. If the certificate will be requested from a Microsoft CA, do these steps:
  - a. From the Certificate Authority drop-down list, select the Enterprise CA that Intel SCS will use to request a certificate that the MPS can authenticate.
  - b. From the Client Certificate Template drop-down list, select the template that will be used to create the client certificate. The templates shown are templates where the Subject Name is supplied in the request and the usage is "Client Authentication". For information how to create a template, see Defining Enterprise CA Templates on page 193.
  - c. Define the Common Names that will be included in the Subject Name of the generated certificate. For more information, see Defining Common Names in the Certificate on page 200.

#### 📝 Note:

- To use this option, Intel SCS must have access to the CA during configuration (see Required Permissions on the CA on page 191).
- If you are creating the profile on a computer that does not have access to the CA, the drop-down lists will not display the CA or the templates. If necessary, you can manually supply the CA name (in the format FQDN\CA Name) and the name of the template.
- 9. Click **OK**. The settings are saved and the Management Presence Server window closes.

## **5.8.2 Defining Remote Access Policies**

A Remote Access policy defines what will cause the Intel AMT device to establish a connection with an MPS (the trigger), and to which MPS it will connect. If Remote Access is enabled, you must define at least one Remote Access policy.

#### To define a remote access policy:

1. From the Remote Access Policy List section of the Remote Access window, click **Add**. The Remote Access Policy window opens.

🔐 Remote Access Policy	_ 🗆 🗵
General	_
Policy Name:	
Tunnel Lifetime Limit 💿 No Limit 🔿 🔤 Minutes	
Trigger: 🚺 📃 Fast Call For Help	
OS interface	
BIOS interface	
Ø OS and BIOS interfaces	
Alerte	
	_
Scheduled maintenance every: 0	
Management Presence Server	_
Preferred Server: () Available Servers:	
abc.com:80	
Alternative Server.	
OK Car	icel

Figure 5-11: Remote Access Policy Window

- 2. In the Policy Name field, enter a descriptive name for the policy.
- 3. In the Tunnel Lifetime Limit field, enter an interval in minutes. When there is no activity in an established tunnel for this period of time, the Intel AMT device will close the tunnel. Selecting **No Limit** means the tunnel will not time out but will stay open until it is closed by the user, or when a different policy with higher priority needs to be processed.
- 4. In the Trigger section, select the trigger or triggers for this policy:
  - **Fast Call For Help** The Intel AMT device establishes a tunnel with the MPS when the user initiates a connection request. If required, you can limit when the user can access this option (only from the operating system or only from the BIOS). By default, both options are available to the user.
  - **Alerts** The device establishes a connection when an event occurs that generates an alert addressed to the network interface.
  - Scheduled maintenance every The device connects to the MPS based on the number of hours, minutes, or seconds defined here.

#### Vote:

A policy can include one or more triggers, but two different policies cannot contain the same trigger.

- 5. In the Management Presence Server section, select the MPSs that apply to the policy (up to two). When a trigger occurs, the Intel AMT device attempts to connect to the server listed in the Preferred Server field. If that connection does not succeed, the device tries to connect to the server listed in the Alternative Server field, if one was specified.
- 6. Click **OK**. The Remote Access Policy window closes.

### 5.9 Defining Trusted Root Certificates

An Intel AMT system must have a trusted root certificate to use any of these features:

- Remote Access using a Management Presence Server
- Mutual authentication in Transport Layer Security
- Most types of 802.1x setups

#### To define the trusted root certificates:

1. From the relevant feature window, click **Edit List**. The Trusted Root Certificates Used In Profile window opens.

🚰 Trusted Root Certificates Used In Profile
All the trusted root certificates selected in the following list will be configured to the Intel® AMT system and used to authenticate servers when using the following features: * Mutual authentication in Transport Layer Security (TLS Mutual) * Most types of 802. 1x setups * When defining a Management Presence Server (MPS) for Remote Access
Select at least one trusted root certificate (but not more than four) to be used for all features:           Add           View
Cancel

Figure 5-12: Trusted Root Certificates Used In Profile Window

2. To add a trusted root certificate, click **Add**. The Add Trusted Root Certificate window opens.

đ	Add Trusted Root Certificate
	From Certificate Authority:
	C From File:
	Browse
	View OK Cancel



- 3. Select one of these:
  - From Certificate Authority From the drop-down list, select the Enterprise Certification Authority (CA).
  - From File Enter the path to the file or click **Browse** to locate and select a certificate. The file must be in base64 PEM format.

<b>3</b> 7 -	N	10	•
-		LC	Ξ.

You can only add a certificate from a CA if the certificate is self-signed and the CA is a root CA. You cannot add a certificate from a subordinate CA.

- 4. Click **OK**. The Path to Root Certificate window closes and the certificate shows in the Trusted Root Certificates Used In Profile window.
- 5. Select the check box of at least one of the trusted root certificates in the list.
- 6. Click **OK**. The Trusted Root Certificates Used In Profile window closes.

### 5.10 Defining Transport Layer Security (TLS)

The Transport Layer Security (TLS) window of the Configuration Profile Wizard lets you define TLS settings to apply to the Intel AMT system. When TLS is enabled, the Intel AMT device authenticates itself with other applications using a server certificate. If mutual TLS authentication is enabled, any applications that interact with the device must supply client certificates that the device uses to authenticate the applications.

🛱 Configuration Profile Wizard: Profile1				
Optional Setti	ngs: Transport Layer Security (TLS)			
Getting Started Profile Scope Optional Settings AD Integration Access Control List Home Domains Remote Access Transport Layer Security Network Configuration System Settings Finish	System Authentication (Basic Security)         Select the method for creating the certificate:       Request certificate from Microsoft CA         Certificate Authority:       Image: Certificate Authority:         Image: Certificate Template:       Image: Certificate Template:         Server Certificate Template:       Image: Certificate Template:         Common Names (CNs) in certificate:       Image: Default CNs       Image: Certificate CNs         Cutual Authentication (Advanced Security)       Image: Common Names (CNs) in certificates used to authenticate requests to the system must appear in the list below. If they do not, use the Edit List option.       Image: Certificate Certificates used to authenticate requests to the system must appear in the list below. If they do not, use the Edit List option.			

Figure 5-14: Transport Layer Security (TLS) Window



#### To configure TLS settings:

- 1. From the Select the method for creating the certificate drop-down list, select the source for the certificate that will be installed in the Intel AMT device:
  - **Request certificate from Microsoft CA** By default, the settings for this option are displayed. If you are using a Microsoft CA, continue from step 2.
  - **Request Certificate via CA plugin** This option is only available if you have installed the optional CA plugin. For information about this option, see Using Intel SCS with the CA Plugin on page 199. If you select this option, enter the necessary settings (as defined by the plugin provider) and continue from step 3.

- 2. If the certificate will be requested from a Microsoft CA, do these steps:
  - a. From the Certificate Authority drop-down list, select the certification authority. Intel SCS automatically detects if the selected CA is a Standalone root CA or an Enterprise root CA.
  - b. If you are using an Enterprise root CA, you must select the template that will be used to create the certificate. From the Server Certificate Template drop-down list, select the template that you defined for TLS. For information how to create a template for TLS, see step 15 of Defining Enterprise CA Templates on page 193.
  - c. Define the Common Names that will be included in the Subject Name of the generated certificate. For more information, see Defining Common Names in the Certificate on page 200.

#### 📝 Note:

- To use this option, Intel SCS must have access to the CA during configuration (see Required Permissions on the CA on page 191).
- If you are creating the profile on a computer that does not have access to the CA, the drop-down lists will not display the CA or the templates. If necessary, you can manually supply the CA name (in the format FQDN\CA Name) and the name of the template. When entering these values manually, you must also select the type of CA (Enterprise CA or Standalone CA).
- 3. (Optional) To enable mutual TLS:
  - a. Select Use mutual authentication for remote interface.
  - b. Define the trusted root certificates that will be used by Intel AMT systems configured with this profile (see Defining Trusted Root Certificates on page 102).
  - c. (Optional) Define advanced mutual TLS settings (see Defining Advanced Mutual Authentication Settings below).

### 5.10.1 Defining Advanced Mutual Authentication Settings

The Advanced Mutual Authentication Settings window lets you define a Certificate Revocation List (CRL). The CRL is a list of entries, usually supplied by a CA, that indicate which certificates have been revoked (see CRL XML Format on page 202 for the required format).

You can also define the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) suffixes that will be used by mutual authentication. The Intel AMT device will validate that any client certificates used by management consoles have one of the listed suffixes in the certificate subject. If no FQDN suffixes are defined, the Intel AMT device will not validate client certificate subject names.

#### To define advanced mutual TLS settings:

1. From the TLS window, click **Advanced**. The Advanced Mutual Authentication Settings window opens.

🚮 Advanced Mutual Authentication Settings
Certificate Revocation List (CRL) ————————————————————————————————————
Use CRL
Current CRLs taken from:
Trusted Domains
Indecise secondy by indening the sum are certained to subject with the domains () New Remove
OK Cancel

Figure 5-15: Advanced Mutual Authentication Settings Window

- 2. (Optional) Define the CRL you want to use in this profile:
  - a. Select Use CRL.
  - b. Click Load File. The Open window opens.
  - c. Browse to the location of the CRL XML file, select it and click **Open**. The information in the file is imported into the configuration profile, and the name of the file is added to the list.
- 3. (Optional) Define the trusted domains to use in mutual authentication. To add a domain to the list, click New and specify the domain in the Domain Properties window. The Intel AMT system will validate that any client certificates used by the management consoles have one of the listed suffixes in the certificate subject. If no FQDN suffixes are defined, the Intel AMT system will not validate client certificate subject names.
- 4. Click **OK**. The Advanced Mutual Authentication Settings window closes.

### 5.11 Defining Network Setups

The Network Configuration window of the Configuration Profile Wizard lets you define several network setups that the Intel AMT device must use. A network setup includes encryption and authentication protocol settings and can be used for wired or wireless connections. If you define WiFi Connection settings in the profile, the wireless interface of Intel AMT is enabled during configuration.

#### Vote:

Removing the WiFi Connection settings from a profile does not always disable the wireless interface of Intel AMT. For more information, see Disabling the Wireless Interface on page 223.

🚮 Configuration Profile Wizard: Pr	rofile1			
Optional Settings: Network Configuration				
Getting Started Profile Scope Optional Settings AD Integration Access Control List Home Domains Remote Access Transport Layer Security Network Configuration System Settings Finish	WiFi connection without a WiFi setup:         Allow WiFi connection with the following WiFi setups:         Image: Allow WiFi connection with the following WiFi setups:         Image: Allow WiFi connection with the following WiFi setups:         Image: Allow WiFi connection with the following WiFi setups:         Image: WiFi Setup Name         B02.1x         Authentication         Image: Allow WiFi connection of Intel® AMT with host platform WiFi profiles         Image: Allow WiFi connection also in S1-S5 operating system power states         Mired 802.1x Authentication         802. 1x Setup Name:         Image: Allow WiFi connection (EAC)         Add or edit a WiFi profile or the wired 802. 1x setup to define an EAC-compatible 802. 1x protocol			

Figure 5-16: Network Configuration Window

#### To define network setups:

- 1. From the WiFi Connection section, select one of these:
  - Allow WiFi connection without a WiFi setup Select this option if you want to allow WiFi connection without a WiFi setup (using the hosts WiFi settings). You can select this option only if you define a home domain in the Home Domains list and do not select a WiFi setup.
  - Allow WiFi connection with the following WiFi setups Select this option if you want to define WiFi setups (see Creating WiFi Setups on the next page).

After creating WiFi setups you can also do these tasks:

- Edit an existing WiFi setup by clicking Edit.
- Remove a WiFi setup from the list by clicking **Remove**.
- Select a WiFi setup and click the Up or Down arrows to change the priority of the WiFi setup in the list.

#### 🗹 Note:

If you enable support for WiFi synchronization (step 2), it is not mandatory to define WiFi setups in the profile.

- 2. (Optional) Intel AMT 6.0 and higher includes a Wireless Profile Synchronization feature. This feature enables synchronization of the wireless profiles in the operating system with the WiFi setups defined in the Intel AMT device. When the **Enable Synchronization of Intel® AMT with host platform WiFi profiles** check box is selected, support for this feature is enabled. To use this feature to synchronize profiles, the Intel PROSet/Wireless Software must be installed on the operating system. For more information, refer to the documentation of the Intel PROSet/Wireless Software.
- (Optional) By default, connection to the Intel AMT device via the WiFi connection is available only when the operating system is in the S0 power state. (Enabling WiFi connection in all power states uses more battery power.) If you want to enable the WiFi connection in all S0-S5 power states, select Enable WiFi connection also in S1-S5 operating system power states.
- 4. If required, from the 802.1x Setup Name drop-down list, select the 802.1x setup to use on a wired LAN. This setup will be used when the Intel AMT device is active in S3, S4, or S5 power states. Optionally, you can also edit an existing 802.1x setup by clicking Edit or create a new 802.1x setup by clicking Add (see Creating 802.1x Setups on page 111).

- 5. (Optional) Define advanced wired 802.1x authentication options:
  - a. Click Advanced. The Advanced Wired 802.1x Settings window opens.



Figure 5-17: Advanced Wired 802.1x Settings Window

- b. Select the check boxes of the options you want to enable:
  - Enable 802.1x for Intel® AMT even if host is not authorized for 802.1x Manageability traffic is enabled even if the host is unable to complete 802.1x authentication to the network.
  - Keep 802.1x session open after boot to allow PXE boot for .... minutes
     The 802.1x session remains active after a PXE boot for the number of minutes that you specify (up to 1440 minutes-24 hours). This is the period allowed for completion of an 802.1x authentication.
     This parameter can be set only when an 802.1x profile has been selected. If the 802.1x profile is deleted, this value will be reset to zero.
- c. Click **OK**. The Advanced Wired 802.1x Settings window closes and the settings are saved.
- 6. If required, define the End-Point Access Control (EAC) parameters (see Defining End-Point Access Control on page 114).

### 5.11.1 Creating WiFi Setups

The WiFi setups defined in the Intel AMT device are required to enable communication with the Intel AMT device over a wireless network. These WiFi setups can also be used to enable Remote Access via a Management Presence Server (MPS) even when the computer is not in the enterprise network. The total number of WiFi setups (including 802.1x WiFi setups) that can be configured depends on the version of Intel AMT:

- Intel AMT 8.x and lower Up to a maximum of 15
- Intel AMT 9.0 and higher Up to a maximum of 7

#### To create a WiFi setup:

1. From the WiFi Connection section of the Network Configuration window, click **Add**. The WiFi Setup window opens.

General         Setup Name:         SSID:         Oata Encryption         Key Management Protocol:         WiFi Protected Access (WPA)	
Encryption Algorithm: Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP)  Authentication  O Passphrase: Confirm Passphrase:	
802.1x Setup:     Add     Edit	

Figure 5-18: WiFi Setup Window

- 2. In the Setup Name field, enter a name for the WiFi setup. The setup name can be up to 32 characters, and must not contain (/ \ < > : ; \* | ? ") characters.
- 3. In the SSID field, enter the Service Set Identifier (up to 32 characters) that identifies the specific WiFi network. If left empty, the device will try to connect to all WiFi networks that use Data Encryption as defined in this WiFi Setup.
- 4. From the Key Management Protocol drop-down list, select one of these:
  - WiFi Protected Access (WPA)
  - Robust Security Network (RSN)
- 5. From the Encryption Algorithm drop-down list, select one of these:
  - Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP)
  - Counter mode CBC MAC Protocol (CCMP)
- 6. In the Authentication section, select one of these:
  - **Passphrase** Enter a Passphrase for the WiFi setup. The Passphrase must contain between 8 and 63 printable ASCII characters.
  - **802.1x Setup** From the drop-down list, select the 802.1x setup to use in this WiFi setup. Optionally, you can also edit an existing 802.1x setup by clicking **Edit** or create a new 802.1x setup by clicking Add (see Creating 802.1x Setups on the next page).
- 7. Click **OK**. The WiFi setup window closes and the setup is added to the list.

### 5.11.2 Creating 802.1x Setups

The IEEE802.1x network protocol provides an authentication mechanism to devices wishing to attach to a LAN, either establishing a point-to-point connection or preventing it if authentication fails. It is used for most wireless 802.11 access points and is based on the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP). You can include the 802.1x setups you define in the profile for wireless and wired connections. (The "EAP (GTC)" protocol can only be used in 802.1x wired setups.)

#### **Note:**

802.1x setups require integration with Active Directory (see Defining Active Directory Integration on page 90) and an Enterprise-root CA.

#### To create an 802.1x setup:

1. From the WiFi Setup window or the Wired 802.1x Authentication section of the Network Configuration window, click **Add**. The 802.1x Setup window opens.

802.1x Setup		
Definition		
Setup Name: 🕔		
Protocol:	EAP-FAST (MS-CHAP v2)	
Authoritication		
Colore the method for meeting the		
select the method for creating th	Request certificate from Microsoft CA	
Cortificato Authoritu		
Certificate Authority:		
Client Certificate Template:		
	Refresh CAs & Templates	
Common Names (CNs) in certific	cate:	
Roaming Identity Select the trusted root certificate below. If it does not appear in the	e used to authenticate the RADIUS server from the list le list, use the Edit List option.	
RADIUS Server Verification		
O not verify RADIUS server	certificate subject name	
C Verify server's FQDN:		
O Verify converte demain auffin		
<ul> <li>venty server's domain suffix;</li> </ul>		

Figure 5-19: 802.1x Setup Window

2. In the Setup Name field, enter a name for this 802.1x setup. The setup name can be up to 32 characters, and must not contain (/\<>:; \* |?") characters.

3. From the Protocol drop-down list, select the required protocol. The options in the Authentication section are enabled/disabled according to the protocol selected, as described in this table.

Protocol	Client Certificate	Trusted Root Certificate	Roaming Identity
EAP-TLS	Required	Required	Not available
EAP-TTLS (MS-CHAP v2)	Optional	Required	Optional
EAP-PEAP (MS-CHAP v2)	Optional	Required	Optional
EAP (GTC)	Not available	Not available	Not available
EAP-FAST (MS-CHAP v2)	Optional	Required	Optional
EAP-FAST (GTC)	Optional	Required	Optional
EAP-FAST (TLS)	Required	Required	Optional

Table 5-2: Authentication Options Per Protocol

- 4. From the Select the method for creating the certificate drop-down list, select the source for the certificate that will be installed in the Intel AMT device:
  - Request certificate from Microsoft CA If you are using a Microsoft CA, continue from step 5.
  - **Request Certificate via CA plugin** This option is only available if you have installed the optional CA plugin. For information about this option, see Using Intel SCS with the CA Plugin on page 199. If you select this option, enter the necessary settings (as defined by the plugin provider) and continue from step 6.
  - **Do not use a certificate** Instead of using a certificate, authentication is done with a username and password. (This option is shown only if client certificates are optional for the Protocol selected in step 3.) Continue from step 6.

- 5. If the certificate will be requested from a Microsoft CA, do these steps:
  - a. From the Certificate Authority drop-down list, select the Enterprise CA that Intel SCS will use to request a certificate that the RADIUS server can authenticate.
  - b. From the Client Certificate Template drop-down list, select the template that will be used to create the client certificate. The templates shown are templates where the Subject Name is supplied in the request and the usage is "Client Authentication". For information how to create a template, see Defining Enterprise CA Templates on page 193.
  - c. Define the Common Names that will be included in the Subject Name of the generated certificate. For more information, see Defining Common Names in the Certificate on page 200.

#### 📝 Note:

- To use this option, Intel SCS must have access to the CA during configuration (see Required Permissions on the CA on page 191).
- If you are creating the profile on a computer that does not have access to the CA, the drop-down lists will not display the CA or the templates. If necessary, you can manually supply the CA name (in the format FQDN\CA Name) and the name of the template.
- 6. (Optional) To enable roaming, select the **Roaming Identity** check box. The user will connect to the RADIUS server with an identity of Anonymous.
- 7. If a trusted root certificate is required (see the table in step 3), select it from the list of trusted root certificates. If it does not appear in the list, click Edit List to define the location of the trusted root certificate (see Defining Trusted Root Certificates on page 102). This certificate will be used in the 802.1x setup to authenticate with a RADIUS server.
- 8. From the RADIUS Server Verification section, select one of these:
  - Do not verify RADIUS server certificate subject name
  - Verify server's FQDN Enter the FQDN of the RADIUS server.
  - Verify server's domain suffix Enter the domain name suffix of the RADIUS server.
- 9. Click **OK**. The 802.1x Setup window closes and the 802.1x setup is saved.

### 5.11.3 Defining End-Point Access Control

If the 802.1x profile's protocol supports End-Point Access Control (EAC), you can use NAC/NAP authentication along with the RADIUS server to authenticate the Intel AMT device.

# Note:

EAC requires integration with Active Directory (see Defining Active Directory Integration on page 90) and an Enterprise-root CA.

To define EAC:

1. From the Network Configuration window, click **Configure EAC**. The Configure End-Point Access Control window opens.

🔂 Configure End-Point Access Control
Specify End-Point Access Control (EAC) service provider details below.
EAC vendor: 💿 NAC
C NAP or NAP-NAC Hybrid
C Both NAC and NAP
Please note that Intel® AMT 9.0 and higher does not support NAC
Highest hash algorithm supported by authentication server:
Select the method for creating the certificate: Request certificate from Microsoft CA
Certificate Authority:
Certificate Template:
Common Names (CNs) in certificate:  Common Names (CNs) in certificate: Common Names (C
OK         Cancel

Figure 5-20: Configure End-Point Access Control Window

- 2. In the EAC vendor section, select one of these:
  - NAC
  - NAP or NAC-NAP Hybrid
  - Both NAC and NAP

#### Vote:

Intel AMT 9.0 and higher does not support NAC. This means that if you select the NAC option, EAC will not be configured on systems with Intel AMT 9.0 and higher configured using this profile.

- 3. From the Highest hash algorithm supported by the authentication server drop-down list, select one of these:
  - SHA-1
  - SHA-256 (only supported on Intel AMT 6.0 and higher)
  - SHA-384 (only supported on Intel AMT 6.0 and higher)
- 4. From the Select the method for creating the certificate drop-down list, select the source for the certificate that will be installed in the Intel AMT device:
  - **Request certificate from Microsoft CA** By default, the settings for this option are displayed. If you are using a Microsoft CA, continue from step 5.
  - **Request Certificate via CA plugin** This option is only available if you have installed the optional CA plugin. For information about this option, see Using Intel SCS with the CA Plugin on page 199. If you select this option, enter the necessary settings (as defined by the plugin provider) and continue from step 6.
- 5. If the certificate will be requested from a Microsoft CA, do these steps:
  - a. From the Certificate Authority drop-down list, select the Enterprise CA that Intel SCS will use to request a certificate for EAC posture signing.
  - b. From the Certificate Template drop-down list, select the template that will be used to create the client certificate. The templates shown are templates where the Subject Name is supplied in the request. For information how to create a template, see Defining Enterprise CA Templates on page 193.
  - c. Define the Common Names that will be included in the Subject Name of the generated certificate. For more information, see Defining Common Names in the Certificate on page 200.

#### 📝 Note:

- To use this option, Intel SCS must have access to the CA during configuration (see Required Permissions on the CA on page 191).
- If you are creating the profile on a computer that does not have access to the CA, the drop-down lists will not display the CA or the templates. If necessary, you can manually supply the CA name (in the format FQDN\CA Name) and the name of the template.
- 6. Click **OK**. The Configure End-Point Access Control window closes.

### 5.12 Defining System Settings

The System Settings window of the Configuration Profile Wizard lets you define several settings in the Intel AMT device.

🛱 Configuration Profile Wizard: Profile1					
System Settings					
Getting Started Profile Scope Optional Settings AD Integration Access Control List Home Domains Remote Access Transport Layer Security Network Configuration System Settings Finish	Maagement Interfaces   Select which management interfaces to enable:    Web UI   Selid Over LAN   IDE Redirection    WtM Redirection   RHB    Password for KVM Sessions:    Imagement Settings    Specify the system power states in which the Intel@ Management Engine is operational   Always On (\$0-55)   Imagement Settings   I				
	Modify Optional Settings (< Back Next > Ca	ancel			

Figure 5-21: System Settings Window

For information about these settings, see:

- Management Interfaces on the next page
- Power Management Settings on page 118
- Network and Other Settings on page 118

### Management Interfaces

- 1. Select the interfaces you want to open on the Intel AMT system:
  - Web UI Enables you to manage and maintain Intel AMT systems using a browser-based interface.
  - Serial Over LAN Enables you to remotely manage Intel AMT systems by encapsulating keystrokes and character display data in a TCP/IP stream.
  - **IDE Redirection** IDE-R enables you to map a drive on the Intel AMT system to a remote image or drive. This functionality is generally used to reboot an Intel AMT system from an alternate drive.
  - **KVM Redirection** Opens the KVM Redirection interface. For more information about KVM, see Support for KVM Redirection on page 21.
- (Optional) When the KVM Redirection check box is selected, the RFB Password for KVM Sessions field is enabled. This password is only necessary if your VNC client uses port 5900 (see VNC Clients on page 21). If you enter a password, it must be EXACTLY eight characters (see Password Format on page 9).
- 3. (Optional) By default, user consent is necessary before a KVM redirection session can begin (see User Consent on page 12). If you want to change the user consent settings for KVM redirection sessions:
  - a. Click **KVM Settings**. The KVM Redirection Settings window opens.

KVM Redirection Settings	
User consent required befor Timeout for user consent:	re beginning KVM session
0	OK Cancel

Figure 5-22: KVM Redirection Settings Window

b. If you want to remove the user consent requirement, clear the **User consent required before beginning KVM session** check box.

✓ Note:
User consent is mandatory for Intel AMT 6.2 and higher devices if they are configured in Client Control mode. Thus, if you want to remove the user consent requirement, you must configure these devices in Admin Control mode.

c. If User Consent is required, the Timeout for user consent field defines the maximum time (in minutes) allocated for the user consent process. If the user consent process is not completed in this time, a new KVM connection request must be sent.

### **Power Management Settings**

- 1. From the drop-down list, select one of these:
  - Always On (SO-S5) If the system is connected to the power supply, the Intel AMT manageability features are available in any of the system power states. This is the recommended setting.
  - Host is On (S0) The Intel AMT manageability features are available only if the operating system of the Intel AMT system is up and running. You cannot select this setting if the Enable WiFi connection also in S1-S5 operating system power states check box is selected (in the Network Configuration window).
- 2. (Optional) If you selected Always on (S0-S5), you can select the **Intel® ME will go into a lower power state when idle** check box. If the Intel AMT device supports this feature, the device will go to sleep when there is no activity. When a request arrives, the device automatically wakes up. The Time out if idle field defines the number of minutes the device must wait before it can go to sleep.

### **Network and Other Settings**

1. In the Intel® MEBX Password field, enter a password for the Intel MEBX (see Password Format on page 9). If the RCS detects that the current password in the Intel MEBX is the default password, it will replace it with this password. If the default Intel MEBX password was already replaced, this password is ignored (it is not set in the Intel MEBX).

#### **Note:**

If the Intel AMT system will be put in the Client Control mode, this password will not be set in the Intel MEBX. For more information, see Access to the Intel MEBX on page 14.

- 2. Define the password of the default admin user built into each Intel AMT device:
  - Use the following password for all systems The password you define here (see Password Format on page 9) is set in all devices configured with this profile.
  - Create a random password for each system A different (random) password is generated for each device.
  - Use a Master Password to create a password for each system This option is only shown if a Digest Master Password is set in the RCS.

#### Vote:

For important information about these password options (see Admin Permissions in the Intel AMT Device on page 15).

3. (Optional) Select **Synchronize Intel® AMT clock with the operating system**. When this check box is selected, the Intel AMT clock will automatically synchronize with the operating system clock. This option is available only from Intel AMT 9.0 and higher.

#### Vote:

This option can make it possible for attackers (via a compromised operating system) to change the Intel AMT clock. An unsynchronized clock can cause Kerberos based authentication to Intel AMT to fail. Select this option only if you are sure that the operating systems in your organization are sufficiently secured.

- 4. (Optional) **Select Enable Intel® AMT to respond to ping requests**. When this check box is selected, the Intel AMT device will respond to a ping if the host platform does not respond.
- 5. (Optional) You can define which interfaces are open for the local Fast Call for Help feature. If the computer is inside the enterprise network, the user can initiate a connection request to connect to a management console. By default, the user can access this option from the operating system and from the BIOS. To change this setting, do one of these:
  - To close both interfaces, clear the **Enable Fast Call for Help (within the enterprise network)** check box.
  - To select which interface to open, click **Fast Call For Help Settings** and select the interface from the Fast Call for Help interfaces window:



- You cannot make changes to this setting if a Fast Call For Help trigger was defined in a Remote Access policy. The setting in the policy will be used for remote and local connection requests.
- To enable the Fast Call for Help feature from outside the enterprise network, see Defining Remote Access on page 98.
- (Optional) Click Set to define the source that Intel SCS will use to define the IP and FQDN of the Intel AMT device. This step is only required if you need to change the default settings (see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on the next page).

#### Vote:

The default network settings that Intel SCS puts in the device will operate correctly for most network environments.

### 5.12.1 Defining IP and FQDN Settings

Each Intel AMT device can have its own IP and FQDN settings. The IP and FQDN settings are usually the same as those defined in the host operating system, but they can be different. Intel SCS puts these settings into the Intel AMT device.

🚮 Network Settings	
FQDN	
Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:         Image: Specify the source of the FQDN that will be set in the FQDN	
C Get the FQDN from the dedicated network settings file	
The device and the OS will have the same FQDN (Shared FQDN)	
IP	_
Specify the source of the IP that will be set in the Intel® AMT device:	
Get the IP from the DHCP server (1)	
O Use the same IP as the host (for static IP only)	
O Get the IP from the dedicated network settings file	
DNS	_
Define how the device will update the DNS with the FQDN and IP:	
O Do not update	
C Update only via DHCP option 81	
<ul> <li>Update the DNS directly or via DHCP option 81</li> </ul>	
	Cancel

Figure 5-23: Network Settings Window

#### To define the IP and FQDN settings:

- 1. From the FQDN section, select the source for the FQDN (hostname.suffix):
  - Use the following as the FQDN:
    - **Primary DNS FQDN** The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the "Primary DNS Suffix" from the host operating system. This is the default setting and is correct for most network environments.
    - **On-board LAN connection-specific DNS FQDN** The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the "Connection-specific DNS Suffix" of the on-board wired LAN interface.
    - **Host Name** Takes the host name from the operating system. The suffix is blank.
    - Active Directory FQDN The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the AD domain of which the host operating system is a member.
    - DNS Look Up FQDN Takes the name returned by an "nslookup" on the IP address of the onboard wired LAN interface. To use this option, the DNS must be configured correctly with Reverse Lookup Zones.

#### • Get the FQDN from the dedicated network settings file

#### 📝 Note:

If you select a dedicated network settings file as the source for the FQDN or IP:

- Make sure that the file contains only the settings (FQDN / IP) that you want to supply using the file. For information about the format and tags of the XML file, see the NetworkSettings.xml example file located in the sample files folder.
- Do not forget to supply the path to the file using the /NetworkSettingsFile parameter of the Configurator CLI command.
- 2. (Optional) Intel AMT 6.0 and higher includes a setting called "Shared FQDN". This setting can change the behavior of the Intel AMT device when using option 81 of the DHCP server to update DNS:
  - When this setting is true, the Intel AMT device will send broadcast queries only when the operating system is not running. This is the default behavior of all Intel AMT versions that do not support the Shared FQDN setting.
  - When false, the device will always send its own broadcast queries, even when the operating system is running. For Intel AMT 6.0 and higher devices that will be configured with a dedicated FQDN, clear this check box: **The device and the OS will have the same FQDN (Shared FQDN)**.
- 3. From the IP section, select the source for the IP settings:
  - Get the IP from the DHCP server
  - Use the same IP as the host (for static IP only)
  - Get the IP from the dedicated network settings file

- 4. In the DNS section, define how Intel AMT 6.0 and higher will update the Domain Name System (DNS) with the FQDN and IP:
  - **Do not update** Disables all DNS updates by the Intel AMT device.
  - Update only via DHCP option 81 The device will use the DHCP option 81 to request that the DHCP server update the DNS on its behalf. On Intel AMT 6.x and 7.x systems, Intel SCS only supports this option on the latest firmware versions.
  - Update the DNS directly or via DHCP option 81 Intel AMT 6.0 and higher includes the Intel AMT Dynamic DNS Update (DDNS Update) Client. When enabled, this client can periodically update the DNS with the FQDN and IP address configured in the Intel AMT device. When selected, the device uses option 81 to ask the DHCP for permission to update the DNS. Intel AMT will send DDNS updates based on the policy configured in the DHCP server returned in the DHCP option 81 flags.

Vote:

All systems that have Intel AMT 5.x or lower are always configured to update the DNS via DHCP option 81. (This is the only option that those versions support.)

5. Click **OK**. The Network Settings window closes.

# Chapter 6

# Using the Configurator

This chapter describes how to use the Intel SCS Configurator.

For more information, see:

6.1	About the Configurator.	
6.2	CLI Syntax	124
6.3	Configurator Log Files	125
6.4	CLI Global Options	125
6.5	Verifying the Status of Intel AMT.	126
6.6	Discovering Systems	126
6.7	Configuring Systems (Unified Configuration).	129
6.8	Configuring Systems using the RCS	130
6.9	Adding a Configured System.	132
6.10	Creating TLS-PSK Pairs	133
6.11	Configuring a System using a USB Key	135
6.12	Maintaining Configured Systems	138
6.13	Maintaining Systems using the RCS.	140
6.14	Unconfiguring Intel AMT Systems	142
6.15	Moving from Client Control to Admin Control.	145
6.16	Disabling Client Control Mode	147
6.17	Sending a Hello Message	147
6.18	Disabling the EHBC Option.	148
6.19	Running Scripts with the Configurator/RCS.	149
6.20	Configurator Return Codes	156

# 6.1 About the Configurator

The Command Line Interface (CLI) of the Configurator component lets you automatically do tasks on multiple Intel AMT systems. The Configurator is run locally on the Intel AMT system using a script or a batch file. If possible, the Configurator does the necessary task locally on the system. If not, the Configurator sends the task to the RCS. The CLI also includes commands that make the Configurator send the task to the RCS, even if it can be done locally.

The Configurator (ACUConfig.exe) is located in the Configurator folder.

#### Note

The Configurator folder also contains dll files that are necessary for the Configurator to operate.

### 6.2 CLI Syntax

The Configurator CLI is not case-sensitive. To view a list of the available CLI commands, type ACUConfig (with no parameters) and press <Enter>.

This is the general syntax:

ACUConfig.exe [global options] command [command arguments and options]

To view syntax of a specific command, type the command name followed by "/?".

These conventions are used in the command syntax of the examples:

- Optional parameters are enclosed in square brackets []
- User-defined variables are enclosed in angled brackets < >
- Mutually exclusive parameters are separated with a pipe |
- Where necessary, braces { } are used to group elements together to eliminate ambiguity in the syntax.

#### Note

The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).

### 6.3 Configurator Log Files

The Configurator records errors and other log messages in two locations:

- In the Windows Event Viewer Application log of the Intel AMT system.
- In a log file. By default:
  - A new log file is created each time you run the Configurator. You can use the /KeepLogFile global option to change this default.
  - The log file is saved in the folder where the Configurator is located, and has this format:

ACUlog\_HostName\_YYYY-MM-DD-HH-MI-SS.Log

For example: ACUlog ComputerX 2013-05-01-11-05-57.log.

You can use the /Output File global option to change the default name and location of the log file.

### 6.4 CLI Global Options

You can use any of these global options with the CLI commands:

- /LowSecurity Disables authentication of the ACU.dll digital signature. For more information, see Digital Signing of Files on page 10.
- /Verbose Creates a detailed log
- /KeepLogFile Appends the current log to the existing log file
- /Output {Console | File <logfile> | Silent} Defines where errors and other log messages will be recorded:
  - Console Shows log messages only on the Console screen
  - File <logfile> Lets you change the default name and location of the log file. Supply the full path and name for the log file in the <logfile> parameter.
  - Silent Do not record any log messages (Console or log file)

#### 📝 Note

To save log messages to a file and also display them on the Console screen, use the /Output parameter twice. For example: /Output File <logfile> /Output Console.

### 6.5 Verifying the Status of Intel AMT

Command	Status
Description	Provides details about the status of Intel AMT
Syntax	ACUConfig.exe [global options] Status
Parameters	
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on the previous page

### 6.6 Discovering Systems

Command	SystemDiscovery
Description	Gets data about the Intel AMT device and the host platform. The data can be saved in an XML file on the system and/or in the registry. You can also send the data to the database via the RCS (in database mode). If saved in the registry, the data is saved in each system at this location:
	• 32-bit and 64-bit operating systems: HKLM\SOFTWARE\Intel\Setup and Configuration Software\SystemDiscovery
	• In addition, on 64-bit operating systems: HKLM\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\Intel\Setup and Configuration Software\SystemDiscovery
	This command is just one of the discovery options included with Intel SCS. For more information, see What are the Discovery Options? on page 3. <b>Note:</b>
	<ul> <li>On systems that do not have Intel AMT, this command gets data from the host platform only.</li> </ul>
	• For information about the data that is collected, refer to the Intel(R)_ SCS_Discovery.pdf, located in the SCS_Discovery folder.
Syntax Note: The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).	ACUConfig.exe [global options] SystemDiscovery {[ <filename>]   [/NoFile]} [/NoRegistry] [/ReportToRCS] [/AdminPassword <password>] [/RCSaddress <rcsaddress>] {[/WMIUser <username>] [/WMIUserPassword <password>]} [/SourceForAMTName <source/>] [/NetworkSettingsFile <file>] [/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries>]</retries></file></password></username></rcsaddress></password></filename>

Parameters		
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125	
<filename></filename>	By default, the name of the XML file is the FQDN of the system and it is saved in the same folder as the Configurator. You can change this default name and location by supplying the <filename> parameter. Example: ACUConfig.exe SystemDiscovery C:\MyXMLFile.xml This example creates an XML file named "MyXMLFile" in the root of C. In addition, a log file is created (see Configurator Log Files on page 125).</filename>	
/NoFile	Do not save data in an XML file. If you use this parameter, do not use the <filename> parameter.</filename>	
/NoRegistry	Do not save data in the registry of the system	
/ReportToRCS	Sends the data to the RCS. You can only use this parameter if the RCS is installed in database mode. If this parameter is supplied, the data is updated in the database record of the system. If this parameter is supplied, the /RCSAddress parameter is mandatory. <b>Note:</b> This parameter is used as part of the process to fix Host FQDN mismatches. For more information, see Detecting and Fixing Host FQDN Mismatches on page 172.	
/AdminPassword <password></password>	The current password of the default Digest admin user defined in the Intel AMT device. The SystemDiscovery command gets some of the data about Intel AMT using the WS-Man interface. To use this interface, administrator permissions in Intel AMT are necessary. Without administrator permissions, this data cannot be retrieved and a warning message will be recorded in the log. This parameter is NOT necessary if any of these are true: • The device is in an unconfigured state • The user account running the Configurator is a Kerberos account that is configured in the Intel AMT device with administrator permissions • You supply the /RCSAddress parameter and the RCS can find the password in the database, in a profile, or using the Digest Master Password.	
/RCSaddress <rcsaddress></rcsaddress>	The IP or FQDN of the computer running the RCS	
/WMIUser <username></username>	The name (in the format domain\username) of a user with WMI permissions on the computer running the RCS. This parameter is only required if you run the Configurator with a user account that does not have WMI permissions on the RCS computer. (But only if you want to connect to the RCS.)	
/WMIUserPassword <password></password>	The password of the WMI user	

/SourceForAMTName <source/>	Defines how the FQDN (hostname.suffix) for the Intel AMT device is constructed. Valid values:
	<ul> <li>DNS — The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the "Primary DNS Suffix" from the host operating system. This is the default setting, and is correct for most network environments.</li> </ul>
	• SpecificDNS — The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the "Connection-specific DNS Suffix" of the on-board wired LAN interface.
	• AD — The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the AD domain of which the host operating system is a member.
	<ul> <li>DNSLOOKUP — Takes the FQDN returned by an "nslookup" on the IP address of the on-board wired LAN interface. To use this option, the DNS must be configured correctly with Reverse Lookup Zones.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>HOST — Takes the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is blank.</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> When this parameter is not supplied, the default source for the FQDN is "DNS". However, if the /NetworkSettingsFile parameter is supplied (and FQDN data is included in the file), the FQDN is taken from the file.
/NetworkSettingsFile <file></file>	This parameter tells the Configurator to get the IP and/or the FQDN from a dedicated network settings file. For information about the required XML format, see the NetworkSettings.xml example file located in the sample_files folder.
/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries></retries>	Defines the number of times to resend the request to the RCS if the RCS returns a status of busy. The maximum number of retries is 100. Each request is sent after a random period of time. If not supplied, the default for this parameter is 0.

# 6.7 Configuring Systems (Unified Configuration)

Command	ConfigAMT
Description	Configures Intel AMT with settings in a configuration profile (XML file). Configured systems are reconfigured. You can use this command with the unified configuration process. If the Intel AMT device supports host-based configuration, the configuration is done locally. If not, configuration is done remotely by the RCS. For more information, see Unified Configuration Process on page 7.
Syntax Note: The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).	ACUConfig.exe [global options] ConfigAMT <filename> [/DecryptionPassword <password>] [/AbortOnFailure] [/AdminPassword <password>] [/ADOU <adou path="">] [/NetworkSettingsFile <file>] {[/FileToRun <filename>] [/FileHash <sha256 hash="">] [/FileUser <username>] [/FilePassword <password>]}</password></username></sha256></filename></file></adou></password></password></filename>
Parameters	
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125
<filename></filename>	The XML file containing the configuration parameters for this Intel AMT system
/DecryptionPassword <password></password>	Mandatory if any of the files that the Configurator will use are encrypted (see File Encryption on page 9)
/AbortOnFailure	If configuration fails, put the Intel AMT device in the "Not Provisioned" mode. This parameter is applicable only for systems that were unconfigured when the command started (during reconfiguration this parameter is ignored).
/AdminPassword <password></password>	<ul> <li>The current password of the default Digest admin user defined in the Intel AMT device. This parameter is NOT necessary if any of these are true:</li> <li>The device is in an unconfigured state</li> <li>Intel SCS can find the Digest admin password (in one of the profiles or using a Digest Master Password)</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>The user account running the Configurator/RCS is a Kerberos account that is configured in the Intel AMT device with administrator permissions</li> </ul>
/ADOU <adou path=""></adou>	The path to the Active Directory Organizational Unit (ADOU) containing the AD object of configured systems. If this parameter is supplied, the Configurator will delete the existing AD object representing the system. A new AD object is created in the ADOU defined in the configuration profile.

/NetworkSettingsFile <file></file>	The path to a file that contains the network settings (FQDN and/or IP) to put in the Intel AMT device. Only use this parameter if you defined the source for at least one of these settings as a dedicated network settings file. For more information, see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on page 120.
/FileToRun /FileHash /FileUser /FilePassword	The Configurator can use these parameters to run a script after the command has completed successfully. For more information, see Scripts Run by the Configurator on page 151.

# 6.8 Configuring Systems using the RCS

Command	ConfigViaRCSOnly	
Description	Sends a configuration request to the RCS. The RCS remotely configures Intel AMT using a profile located in the RCS. Configured systems are reconfigured. The RCS uses one of the TLS protocols (PSK or PKI) during the configuration process (see Security Before and During Configuration on page 13). <b>Note:</b> This command puts the Intel AMT device in the Admin Control mode (see Control Modes on page 12).	
Syntax Note: The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).	<pre>ACUConfig.exe [global options] ConfigViaRCSOnly <rcsaddress> <profilename> [/AbortOnFailure] [/AdminPassword <password>] {[/WMIUser <username>] [/WMIUserPassword <password>]} [/ADOU <adou path="">] [/NetworkSettingsFile <file>] [/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries>]</retries></file></adou></password></username></password></profilename></rcsaddress></pre>	
Parameters		
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125	
<rcsaddress></rcsaddress>	The IP or FQDN of the computer running the RCS	
<profilename></profilename>	The profile in the RCS containing the configuration parameters	
/AbortOnFailure	If configuration fails, put the Intel AMT device in the "Not Provisioned" mode. This parameter is applicable only for systems that were unconfigured when the command started (during reconfiguration this parameter is ignored).	

/AdminPassword <password></password>	<ul> <li>The current password of the default Digest admin user defined in the Intel AMT device. This parameter is NOT necessary if any of these are true:</li> <li>The device is in an unconfigured state</li> <li>Intel SCS can find the Digest admin password (in one of the profiles or using a Digest Master Password)</li> <li>The user account running the RCS is a Kerberos account that is configured in the Intel AMT device with administrator permissions</li> </ul>
/WMIUser <username></username>	The name (in the format domain\username) of a user with WMI permissions on the computer running the RCS. This parameter is only required if you run the Configurator with a user account that does not have WMI permissions on the RCS computer.
/WMIUserPassword <password></password>	The password of the WMI user
/ADOU <adou path=""></adou>	The path to the Active Directory Organizational Unit (ADOU) containing the AD object of configured systems. If this parameter is supplied, the RCS will delete the existing AD object representing the system. A new AD object is created in the ADOU defined in the configuration profile.
/NetworkSettingsFile <file></file>	The path to a file that contains the network settings (FQDN and/or IP) to put in the Intel AMT device. Only use this parameter if you defined the source for at least one of these settings as a dedicated network settings file. For more information, see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on page 120.
/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries></retries>	Defines the number of times to resend the request to the RCS if the RCS returns a status of busy. The maximum number of retries is 100. Each request is sent after a random period of time. If not supplied, the default for this parameter is 0.

# 6.9 Adding a Configured System

Command	NotifyRCS
Description	Sends a request to the RCS to add a configured Intel AMT system to the database. The RCS then tries to connect to the Intel AMT device. If successful, the system is added to the database in the "Managed" state. If not, the system is added to the database in the "Unmanaged" state. To understand when this command is necessary, and the limitations of the Unmanaged state, see: • About Adding and Deleting Systems on page 163
	Changing the Managed State of Systems on page 171
	<b>Note:</b> After running this command some information in the database record for the added system might be missing (for example, details about the configuration profile). To update this information, run the SystemDiscovery command (see Discovering Systems on page 126).
Syntax Note: The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).	ACUConfig.exe [global options] NotifyRCS <rcsaddress> [/AdminPassword <password>] {[/WMIUser <username>] [/WMIUserPassword <password>]} [/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries>]</retries></password></username></password></rcsaddress>
Parameters	·
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125
	The ID or FODN of the computer running the PCS

<rcsaddress></rcsaddress>	The IP or FQDN of the computer running the RCS	
/AdminPassword <password></password>	The current password of the default Digest admin user defined in the Intel AMT device. After adding the system to the database, the RCS will try to connect to the system using the password. If you use this parameter, make sure that you supply the correct password. If the password is not correct, the RCS might not be able to connect to the system after it is added to the database.	
/WMIUser <username></username>	The name (in the format domain\username) of a user with WMI permissions on the computer running the RCS. This parameter is only required if you run the Configurator with a user account that does not have WMI permissions on the RCS computer.	
/WMIUserPassword <password></password>	The password of the WMI user	
/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries></retries>	Defines the number of times to resend the request to the RCS if the RCS returns a status of busy. The maximum number of retries is 100. Each request is sent after a random period of time. If not supplied, the default for this parameter is 0.	

# 6.10 Creating TLS-PSK Pairs

Command	CreatePSK	
Description	<ul> <li>This command prepares the Intel AMT system for configuration using the One-Touch Configuration using PSK method.</li> <li>When you run this command, a TLS-PSK pair is immediately put in the RCS and also in a file in a location that you specify. You can run this command from any computer that can access the RCS.</li> <li>When the Intel AMT system is rebooted with a USB key that contains the file, the pair is put in the Intel MEBX of the system. The file must be named Setup.bin and must be placed in the root folder of the USB key.</li> <li>To make sure that Setup.bin is the first file that the BIOS will find during reboot (requirement), format the USB key before creating/copying the file. If the Intel AMT system does not successfully reboot with the USB key you prepared, try this:</li> <li>Make sure that the Setup.bin file name starts with a capital "S"</li> <li>Format the USB key using FAT16</li> <li>Note:</li> <li>When you reboot a system with the USB key, the data in the Setup.bin file is deleted (but the file is not deleted). If you want to use the same TLS-PSK pair to configure multiple systems, save the Setup.bin file before you copy it to the USB key. Then replace the file on the USB key before each reboot.</li> <li>The Configurator does not restrict the size of USB key you can use. But, the computer BIOS must fully support the selected USB key and be able boot from it.</li> </ul>	
Syntax Note: The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).	ACUConfig.exe [global options] CreatePSK <rcsaddress> {/NewMEBxPass <password>} [/CurrentMEBxPass <password>] [/OutputFile <filename>] [/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries>] {[/WMIUser <username>] [/WMIUserPassword <password>]} {{/UsingDhcp}   {/LocalHostIp <ip> /SubnetMaskIp <subnet_mask> [/GatewayAddrIp <ip>] [/DnsAddrIp <ip>] [/SecondaryDnsAddrIp <ip>]}</ip></ip></ip></subnet_mask></ip></password></username></retries></filename></password></password></rcsaddress>	
Parameters		
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125	
<rcsaddress></rcsaddress>	The IP or FQDN of the computer running the RCS	

/NewMEBxPass <password></password>	The new password to put in the Intel MEBX. This parameter is mandatory, even if the password has already been changed from the default of "admin". For information about the required format, see Password Format on page 9.	
/CurrentMEBxPass <password></password>	By default, the Configurator always uses the default password of unconfigured systems ("admin") in this parameter. If this is not the password in the Intel MEBX, supply the correct password. If you do not supply the correct password, the reboot of the Intel AMT system with the USB key will not complete successfully.	
/OutputFile <filename></filename>	The name of the file and the path to the location where you want to save it. If this parameter is not used, by default the file is created in the same folder as the Configurator. Note:	
	The file is NOT encrypted. Make sure that you restrict access to it.	
	<ul> <li>The Configurator overwrites any existing file with the same name without giving a warning.</li> </ul>	
/RCSBusyRetryCount <b>t</b> <retries></retries>	Defines the number of times to resend the request to the RCS if the RCS returns a status of busy. The maximum number of retries is 100. Each request is sent after a random period of time. If not supplied, the default for this parameter is 0.	
/WMIUser <username></username>	The name (in the format domain\username) of a user with WMI permissions on the computer running the RCS. This parameter is only required when running the Configurator under a user without WMI permissions on the RCS computer.	
/WMIUserPassword <password></password>	The password of the WMI user	
By default, the output file is created in a version (1.0) supported by Intel AMT 2.1 and higher. If you use these optional parameters, the output file is created in a version (2.1) that is supported only by Intel AMT 4.0 and higher:		
/UsingDhcp	Sets the DHCP mode to enabled in the Intel MEBX	
/LocalHostIp <ip></ip>	The static IP address (IPV4) to set in the Intel MEBX. If you supply this parameter, the /SubnetMaskIp parameter is mandatory (the remaining static IP parameters are optional). <b>Note:</b> Static IP settings can only be set in a device that is in a fully unconfigured state before rebooting with the USB key.	
/SubnetMaskIp <subnet_mask></subnet_mask>	The subnet mask static IP address to set in the Intel MEBX	
/GatewayAddrIp <ip></ip>	The default gateway static IP address to set in the Intel MEBX	
/DnsAddrIp <ip></ip>	The preferred DNS static IP address to set in the Intel MEBX	

п

# 6.11 Configuring a System using a USB Key

Command	ConfigViaUSB	
Description	Creates a file containing configuration settings. When the Intel AMT system is rebooted with a USB key containing this file, Intel AMT is configured on the system. For more information, see SMB/Manual Configuration on page 5. The Configurator does not restrict the size of USB key you can use. But, the computer BIOS must fully support the selected USB key and be able to boot from it. <b>Note:</b>	
	<ul> <li>The settings you can define are limited. If additional settings are required, they must be performed by a third-party application.</li> </ul>	
	• This command puts the Intel AMT device in the Admin Control mode (see Control Modes on page 12).	
	• You can use this option to define certain KVM parameters not available in Client Control.	
Syntax Note: The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).	<pre>ACUConfig.exe [global options] ConfigViaUSB {/NewMEBxPass <password>} [/CurrentMEBxPass <password>] [/OutputFile <filename>] [/PowerPackage <guid>] {/UsingDhcp}  {/HostName <host_name> /DomainName <domain_name> /LocalHostIp <ip> /SubnetMaskIp <subnet_mask> [/GatewayAddrIp <ip>] [/DnsAddrIp <ip>] [/SecondaryDnsAddrIp <ip>]} [/EnableKVM <false true=""  ="">] [/EnableUserConsent <none all_redirection="" kvm_only=""  ="">] [/EnableRemoteITConsent <false true=""  ="">]</false></none></false></ip></ip></ip></subnet_mask></ip></domain_name></host_name></guid></filename></password></password></pre>	
Parameters		
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125	
/NewMEBxPass <password></password>	The new password to put in the Intel MEBX (see Password Format on page 9). This parameter is mandatory, even if the password has already been changed from the default of "admin".	
/CurrentMEBxPass <password></password>	The current Intel MEBX password. The default password of unconfigured systems is "admin". This parameter is not required for systems that have the default password.	

/PowerPackage <guid></guid>	Power Package GUID (see Power Package GUIDs on the next page)	
/OutputFile <filename></filename>	The name of the file and the path to the location where you want to save it. If this parameter is not used, by default the file is created in the same folder as the Configurator. The file must be named Setup.bin and must be placed in the root folder of the USB key. To make sure that Setup.bin is the first file that the BIOS will find during reboot (requirement), format the USB key before creating/copying the file. If the Intel AMT system does not successfully reboot with the USB key you prepared, try this:	
	<ul> <li>Make sure that the file name starts with a capital "S"</li> </ul>	
	Format the USB key using FAT16	
	Note:	
	• The Setup.bin file is NOT encrypted. Make sure that you restrict access to it.	
	<ul> <li>After configuration is complete, the Configurator deletes the data contained in the file. This means that you must create a new file for each system you want to configure.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>The Configurator overwrites any existing file with the same name without giving a warning.</li> </ul>	
/UsingDhcp	Sets the DHCP mode to enabled in the Intel MEBX	
/HostName <host_name></host_name>	Intel AMT system hostname (1 – 32 characters)	
/DomainName <domain_ name&gt;</domain_ 	Intel AMT system domain name (0 – 63 characters)	
/LocalHostIp <ip></ip>	The IP address (IPV4) to set in the Intel MEBX. If you supply this parameter, the /SubnetMaskIp parameter is mandatory (the remaining IP parameters are optional).	
/SubnetMaskIp <subnet_ mask&gt;</subnet_ 	The subnet mask IP address to set in the Intel MEBX	
/GatewayAddrIp <ip></ip>	The default gateway IP address to set in the Intel MEBX	
/DnsAddrIp <ip></ip>	The preferred DNS IP address to set in the Intel MEBX	
/SecondaryDnsAddrIp <ip></ip>	An alternate DNS IP address to set in the Intel MEBX	
/EnableKVM <false  <br="">true&gt;</false>	Enable/Disable support for KVM redirection. <b>Note:</b> This parameter is mandatory on systems with Intel AMT 6.0 and higher. If you do not supply it, configuration will fail on those systems.	

/EnableUserConsent <none kvm_only=""  =""  <br="">all_redirection&gt;</none>	Defines for which redirection operations user consent is mandatory. For more information, see User Consent on page 12. Note: You can use the all_redirection option only on systems with Intel AMT 7.x and higher.
/EnableRemoteITConsent <false true=""  =""></false>	Defines if it is permitted to remotely make changes to the user consent setting in the Intel AMT device

### 6.11.1 Power Package GUIDs

The optional /PowerPackage parameter enables you to define power management settings of the Intel AMT device during manual configuration. If not supplied, the default power settings defined by the manufacturer are used. This table gives the GUID values (in Hex 32 character format) per Intel AMT version.

Supported Power Package	GUID (Hex 32)	
Intel AMT 6.x and higher (mobile)		
ON in S0	763997110B56504388709812F391B560	
ON in S0, ME Wake in S3/AC, S4-5/AC	30800DEE09C07843AF287868A2DBBE3A	
Intel AMT 6.x and higher (desktop)		
ON in S0	944F8312FB104FDC968E1E232B0C9065	
ON in S0, ME Wake in S3,S4-5	7322734623DC432FA98A13D37982D855	
Intel AMT 5.x (desktop)		
ON in S0	944F8312FB104FDC968E1E232B0C9065	
ON in S0, S3	A18600AB9A7F4C42A6E6BB243A295D9E	
ON in S0, S3, S4-5	7286ABAC96B448E29B9E9B7DF91C7FD4	
ON in S0, ME WoL in S3	7B32CD4D6BBE4389A62A4D7BD8DBD026	
ON in S0, ME WoL in S3, S4-5	7322734623DC432FA98A13D37982D855	
ON in S0, S3, S4-5, OFF After Power Loss	C519A4BA6E6F8D4DB227517F7E4595DB	
ON in S0, ME WoL in S3,S4-5, OFF After Power Loss	D60BE3ED04C52C46B772D18018EE2FC4	
Intel AMT 4.x (mobile)		
ON in S0	763997110B56504388709812F391B560	
ON in S0, S3/AC	26D31C768708C74BBB5F38744315A5FF	
ON in S0, S3/AC, S4-5/AC	530E08DB6C0FD948B2D28958D3F1156E	
Supported Power Package	GUID (Hex 32)	
-------------------------------------	----------------------------------	
ON in S0, ME Wake in S3/AC	055DD5B64CA4874DA5A8B47C14DEDA5F	
ON in S0, ME Wake in S3/AC, S4-5/AC	30800DEE09C07843AF287868A2DBBE3A	

# 6.12 Maintaining Configured Systems

Command	MaintainAMT	
Description	Runs specific maintenance tasks on Intel AMT, based on settings in the <filename> XML file. If the Intel AMT device supports host-based configuration, the maintenance tasks are done locally. If not, the tasks are done remotely by the RCS.</filename>	
Syntax Note: The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).	<pre>ACUConfig.exe [global options] MaintainAMT <filename> <task> [<task>] [/DecryptionPassword <password>] [/AdminPassword <password>] [/NetworkSettingsFile <file>] {[/FileToRun <filename>] [/FileHash <sha256 hash="">] [/FileUser <username>] [/FilePassword <password>]}</password></username></sha256></filename></file></password></password></task></task></filename></pre>	
Parameters		
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125	
<filename></filename>	The XML file containing the original configuration settings that were used to configure Intel AMT. Settings in the XML file not related to the specified maintenance tasks are ignored.	

<task></task>	Define at least one of these maintenance tasks:
	• SyncAMTTime – Synchronizes the clock of the Intel AMT device with the clock of the computer running the RCS. If the device supports host-based configuration, the clock is synchronized with the clock of the host. This task is performed automatically when any of the other tasks are performed.
	• SyncNetworkSettings - Synchronizes network settings of the Intel AMT
	<pre>device as defined in the <networksettings> tag of the <filename> XML file (see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on page 120)</filename></networksettings></pre>
	• ReissueCertificates - Reissues the certificates stored in the Intel AMT
	device. If the device contains 802.1x certificates, the RenewADPassword task is automatically done as well.
	<ul> <li>RenewADPassword – Changes the password of the Active Directory object representing the Intel AMT system.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>RenewAdminPassword – Changes the password of the default Digest admin user in the Intel AMT device according to the password setting defined in the profile.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>AutoMaintain – Automatically does only the maintenance tasks (listed here) that are necessary for this Intel AMT system.</li> </ul>
	For more information, see:
	About Maintenance Tasks on page 17
	Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI on page 19
/DecryptionPassword <password></password>	Mandatory if any of the files that the Configurator will use are encrypted (see File Encryption on page 9)
/AdminPassword <password></password>	The current password of the default Digest admin user defined in the Intel AMT device. This parameter is NOT necessary if any of these are true:
	<ul> <li>Intel SCS can find the Digest admin password (in one of the RCS profiles or using a Digest Master Password)</li> </ul>
	• The user account running the Configurator/RCS is a Kerberos account that is configured in the Intel AMT device with administrator permissions
/NetworkSettingsFile <file></file>	The path to a file that contains the network settings (FQDN and/or IP) to put in the Intel AMT device. Only use this parameter if you defined the source for at least one of these settings as a dedicated network settings file. For more information, see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on page 120.
/FileToRun /FileHash /FileUser /FilePassword	The Configurator can use these parameters to run a script after the command has completed successfully. For more information, see Scripts Run by the Configurator on page 151.

# 6.13 Maintaining Systems using the RCS

Command	MaintainViaRCSOnly	
Description	Runs specific maintenance tasks on Intel AMT, based on settings in the <profilename>. All maintenance tasks are done remotely by the RCS.</profilename>	
Syntax Note: The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).	ACUConfig.exe [global options] MaintainViaRCSOnly <rcsaddress> <profilename> <task> [<task>] [/AdminPassword <password>] {[/WMIUser <username>] [/WMIUserPassword <password>]} [/NetworkSettingsFile <file>] [/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries>]</retries></file></password></username></password></task></task></profilename></rcsaddress>	
Parameters		
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125	
<rcsaddress></rcsaddress>	The IP or FQDN of the computer running the RCS	
<profilename></profilename>	The profile in the RCS containing the original configuration settings that were used to configure Intel AMT. Settings in the profile not related to the specified maintenance tasks are ignored.	

<task></task>	Define at least one of these maintenance tasks:
	• SyncAMTTime – Synchronizes the clock of the Intel AMT device with the clock of the computer running the RCS. This task is performed automatically when any of the other tasks are performed.
	<ul> <li>SyncNetworkSettings - Synchronizes network settings of the Intel AMT device as defined in the <networksettings> tag of the <filename> XML file (see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on page 120)</filename></networksettings></li> </ul>
	• ReissueCertificates - Reissues the certificates stored in the Intel AMT device. If the device contains 802.1x certificates, the RenewADPassword task is automatically done as well.
	<ul> <li>RenewADPassword - Changes the password of the Active Directory object representing the Intel AMT system.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>RenewAdminPassword – Changes the password of the default Digest admin user in the Intel AMT device according to the password setting defined in the profile.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>AutoMaintain – Automatically does only the maintenance tasks (listed here) that are necessary for this Intel AMT system.</li> </ul>
	For more information, see:
	About Maintenance Tasks on page 17
	Manual/Automatic Maintenance using the CLI on page 19
/AdminPassword <password></password>	The current password of the default Digest admin user defined in the Intel AMT device. This parameter is NOT necessary if any of these are true:
-	<ul> <li>The RCS can find the Digest admin password (in one of the RCS profiles or using a Digest Master Password)</li> </ul>
	• The user account running the RCS is a Kerberos account that is configured in the Intel AMT device with administrator permissions
/WMIUser <username></username>	The name (in the format domain\username) of a user with WMI permissions on the computer running the RCS. This parameter is only required when running the Configurator under a user without WMI permissions on the RCS computer.
/WMIUserPassword <password></password>	The password of the WMI user
/NetworkSettingsFile <file></file>	The path to a file that contains the network settings (FQDN and/or IP) to put in the Intel AMT device. Only use this parameter if you defined the source for at least one of these settings as a dedicated network settings file. For more information, see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on page 120.
/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries></retries>	Defines the number of times to resend the request to the RCS if the RCS returns a status of busy. The maximum number of retries is 100. Each request is sent after a random period of time. If not supplied, the default for this parameter is 0.

# 6.14 Unconfiguring Intel AMT Systems

Command	Unconfigure
Description	Unconfigures Intel AMT. If the Intel AMT device supports host-based configuration, unconfiguration is done locally. If not, the Configurator sends the unconfiguration request to the RCS. There are two types of unconfiguration:
	• <b>Partial</b> – Removes the configuration settings from the system and disables the Intel AMT features on the system. The system and the RCS can still communicate since the PID, PPS, admin ACL settings, host name, domain name, and the RCS IP and port number are not deleted. Note that if the manufacturer defined the SOL and IDE interfaces to be closed by default, then a partial configuration operation will close them and they cannot be reopened without physical access to the Intel MEBX. This is a known Firmware limitation.
	• <b>Full</b> – Deletes all the Intel AMT settings from the system and disables the Intel AMT features on the system.
	Note:
	<ul> <li>Systems in Client Control mode are always unconfigured with a "Full" unconfiguration.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>The default unconfiguration type for systems in Admin Control mode is "Partial".</li> </ul>
<b>Syntax</b> <b>Note:</b> The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).	ACUConfig.exe [global options] UnConfigure [/AdminPassword <password>] [/RCSaddress <rcsaddress>] [/Full] [/ADOU <adou path="">] {{[/DomainUser <username> [/DomainUserPassword <password>]}   [/DeleteADObjectViaPCS1}</password></username></adou></rcsaddress></password>
	<pre>{//Deleterbob/ectvlakes// { [/WMIUser <username>] [/WMIUserPassword <password>] } [/SourceForAMTName <source/>] [/NetworkSettingsFile <file>] [/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries>]</retries></file></password></username></pre>
Parameters	
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125
/AdminPassword <password></password>	The current password of the default Digest admin user defined in the Intel AMT device. This parameter is NOT necessary if any of these are true:
	RCS profiles or using a Digest Master Password)
	• The user account running the Configurator/RCS is a Kerberos account that is configured in the Intel AMT device with administrator permissions

/RCSaddress <rcsaddress></rcsaddress>	The IP or FQDN of the computer running the RCS
/Full	For systems in Admin Control mode, does a full unconfiguration (the default is partial unconfiguration)
/ADOU <adou path=""></adou>	During unconfiguration, the Configurator deletes the Active Directory (AD) object that was created to represent the Intel AMT system. (The object was created by Intel SCS only if AD integration was enabled.) By default, the Configurator uses the settings configured in the Intel AMT device to find the location of the AD Organizational Unit (ADOU) containing the object. In large enterprise networks the search for the ADOU can take some time. If you supply this parameter, the Configurator will only look for the object in the Organizational Unit that you define in <adou path="">.</adou>
/DomainUser <username></username>	The name (in the format domain\username) of a domain user with permissions to delete the AD object representing the Intel AMT system. If you supply this parameter, the AD object is deleted using the credentials of this user. Note:
	<ul> <li>For Intel AMT 6.2 and higher systems, by default, the credentials of the user running the Configurator are used to delete the AD object</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>For Intel AMT 6.1 and lower systems, the credentials of the user running the RCS are always used to delete the AD object</li> </ul>
/DomainUserPassword <password></password>	The password of the domain user
/DeleteADObjectViaRCS	If you supply this parameter, the AD object is deleted using the credentials of the user running the RCS. <b>Note:</b>
	<ul> <li>For Intel AMT 6.2 and higher systems, by default, the credentials of the user running the Configurator are used to delete the AD object</li> </ul>
	• For Intel AMT 6.1 and lower systems, the credentials of the user running the RCS are always used to delete the AD object
/WMIUser <username></username>	The name (in the format domain\username) of a user with WMI permissions on the computer running the RCS. This parameter is only required when running the Configurator with a user without WMI permissions on the RCS computer.
/WMIUserPassword <password></password>	The password of the WMI user

/SourceForAMTName <source/>	Defines how the FQDN (hostname.suffix) for the Intel AMT device is constructed. Valid values:
	<ul> <li>DNS — The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the "Primary DNS Suffix" from the host operating system. This is the default setting, and is correct for most network environments.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>SpecificDNS — The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the "Connection-specific DNS Suffix" of the on-board wired LAN interface.</li> </ul>
	• AD — The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the AD domain of which the host operating system is a member.
	<ul> <li>DNSLOOKUP — Takes the FQDN returned by an "nslookup" on the IP address of the on-board wired LAN interface. To use this option, the DNS must be configured correctly with Reverse Lookup Zones.</li> </ul>
	• HOST — Takes the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is blank.
	<b>Note:</b> When this parameter is not supplied, the default source for the FQDN is "DNS". However, if the /NetworkSettingsFile parameter is supplied (and FQDN data is included in the file), the FQDN is taken from the file.
/NetworkSettingsFile <file></file>	This parameter tells the Configurator to get the IP and/or the FQDN from a dedicated network settings file. For information about the required XML format, see the NetworkSettings.xml example file located in the sample_files folder.
/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries></retries>	Defines the number of times to resend the request to the RCS if the RCS returns a status of busy. The maximum number of retries is 100. Each request is sent after a random period of time. If not supplied, the default for this parameter is 0.

# 6.15 Moving from Client Control to Admin Control

Command	MoveToACM
Description	This command modifies the Intel AMT device by changing it from Client Control mode to Admin Control mode. When complete, the security related limitations of the Client Control mode no longer apply to this system (see Control Modes on page 12). To use this command:
	The system must be configured in Client Control mode.
	• The Intel AMT system and the RCS must be setup for authentication using remote configuration certificates. For more information, see Setting up Remote Configuration on page 203.
	Note:
	<ul> <li>This command is not supported if the RCS is installed on a computer running Windows Server 2003 or Windows XP Professional.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>This command is only supported on Intel AMT 7.x and higher.</li> </ul>
	As an alternative for this command, you can do this:
	1. Unconfigure the system.
	<ol><li>Configure the system again using a method that uses the RCS to put the system in the Admin Control mode during configuration.</li></ol>
Syntax Note: The CLI does not support passwords that start with a forward slash (/).	ACUConfig.exe [global options] MoveToACM <rcsaddress> {[/WMIUser <username>] [/WMIUserPassword <password>]} [/AdminPassword <password>] [/CertificateCNSuffix <suffix>] [/SourceForAMTName <source/>] [/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries>]</retries></suffix></password></password></username></rcsaddress>
Parameters	
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125
<rcsaddress></rcsaddress>	The IP or FQDN of the computer running the RCS
/WMIUser <username></username>	The name (in the format domain\username) of a user with WMI permissions on the computer running the RCS. This parameter is only required when running the Configurator with a user without WMI permissions on the RCS computer.
/WMIUserPassword <password></password>	The password of the WMI user

/AdminPassword <password></password>	The current password of the default Digest admin user defined in the Intel AMT device. This parameter is NOT necessary if any of these are true:
	<ul> <li>The Configurator/RCS can find the Digest admin password (in one of the RCS profiles or using a Master Password)</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>The user account running the Configurator/RCS is a Kerberos account that is configured in the Intel AMT device with administrator permissions</li> </ul>
/CertificateCNSuffix <suffix></suffix>	When the MoveToACM command starts, the Configurator sends all the hashed root certificates located in the Intel AMT device to the RCS. The RCS looks in the certificate store of the user account running the RCS for a remote configuration certificate that traces to one of the hashes. For authentication to succeed, the domain suffix of the Common Name (CN) in the Subject Name field of the certificate must match the "Connection-specific DNS Suffix" assigned to the Intel AMT device. This suffix can be assigned to the device using option 15 of the DHCP server (DNS Domain Name). By default, the RCS tries to authenticate using only the first certificate it finds that matches one of the hashes. If this is not the correct certificate (for example, in networks using multiple remote configuration certificates with different domain suffixes), authentication will fail. You can use this parameter to specify the correct DNS Domain Name that is assigned to the Intel AMT device. If supplied, the RCS examines each remote configuration certificate in the store until it finds a certificate with this suffix in the CN.
/SourceForAMTName <source/>	Defines how the FQDN (hostname.suffix) for the Intel AMT device is constructed. Valid values:
	<ul> <li>DNS — The nostname part of the FQDN is the nostname from the nost operating system. The suffix is the "Primary DNS Suffix" from the host operating system. This is the default setting, and is correct for most network environments.</li> </ul>
	• SpecificDNS — The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the "Connection-specific DNS Suffix" of the on-board wired LAN interface.
	<ul> <li>AD — The hostname part of the FQDN is the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is the AD domain of which the host operating system is a member.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>DNSLOOKUP — Takes the FQDN returned by an "nslookup" on the IP address of the on-board wired LAN interface. To use this option, the DNS must be configured correctly with Reverse Lookup Zones.</li> </ul>
	• HOST — Takes the hostname from the host operating system. The suffix is blank.
/RCSBusyRetryCount <retries></retries>	Defines the number of times to resend the request to the RCS if the RCS returns a status of busy. The maximum number of retries is 100. Each request is sent after a random period of time. If not supplied, the default for this parameter is 0.

# 6.16 Disabling Client Control Mode

Command	DisableClientControlMode
Description	Permanently disables the Client Control mode option in the Intel AMT device (see Control Modes on page 12). After running this command, the device cannot be changed back to the Client Control mode. After you run this command:
	<ul> <li>Client Control mode can only be re-enabled from the BIOS of the computer. (Either by resetting the BIOS, or using a manufacturer provided BIOS menu command to re-enable the option.)</li> </ul>
	• Future configuration methods on an unconfigured device can only put the device in Admin Control mode
	• The control mode and configuration status of a device that is already configured is not changed. You cannot use this command on a system that is configured in Admin Control mode.
	Reconfiguration of a configured device does not change the control mode
Syntax	ACUConfig.exe [global options] DisableClientControlMode
Parameters	
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125

### 6.17 Sending a Hello Message

Command	SendHello
Description	Sends a "Hello" message to the RCS. This option is only relevant if you want to use scripts to configure the system (see Remote Configuration Using Scripts on page 212).
Syntax	ACUConfig.exe [global options] SendHello <rcsaddress> [<port>]</port></rcsaddress>
Parameters	
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125
<rcsaddress></rcsaddress>	The IP or FQDN of the computer running the RCS
<port></port>	The port number used by the RCS to listen for Hello messages. If not supplied, the message is sent to the default port (9971).

# 6.18 Disabling the EHBC Option

Command	DisableEmbeddedHBC
Description	<ul> <li>Permanently disables the Embedded Host Based Configuration (EHBC) option in the Intel AMT device. After running this command, the EHBC option cannot be used on the device.</li> <li>After you run this command: <ul> <li>The EHBC option can only be re-enabled on the device by the computer manufacturer or supplier</li> <li>The control mode and configuration status of a device that is already configured is not changed</li> <li>If the device is already configured, you cannot reconfigure the device directly to Client Control mode. You must first unconfigure the device and then reconfigure it with the control mode that you want.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	Note: The EHBC option is only available on Intel AMT systems that were prepared by the manufacturer/supplier to include the EHBC option. The EHBC option was created to make it easier to configure and manage Intel AMT devices that are embedded in unattended systems. For example, a device that is embedded in an Automated Teller Machine (ATM). For more information about the EHBC option, contact your computer manufacturer or supplier.
Syntax	ACUConfig.exe [global options] DisableEmbeddedHBC
Parameters	
[global options]	See CLI Global Options on page 125

### 6.19 Running Scripts with the Configurator/RCS

Intel SCS include options that you can use to run scripts. These scripts can be batch files or executables created using scripting languages. Before the script starts to run, the Configurator/RCS sends parameter values about the Intel AMT system to the script. The script can then use these parameter values. For example, you could use a script to send data to your management console about each Intel AMT system after it is configured.

#### 📝 Note:

The parameter values are sent as a string. Parameters without values are sent as empty strings. Each parameter value is separated by a space.

The Configurator and the RCS support scripts differently (the RCS also sends additional parameters to the scripts).

For more information, see:

- Scripts Run by the RCS below
- Scripts Run by the Configurator on page 151
- Who Runs the Scripts? on page 152
- What if a Failure Occurs? on page 153
- Script Runtime and Timeout on page 153
- Parameters Sent in Base64 Format on page 154
- Script Authentication Mechanism on page 155

### 6.19.1 Scripts Run by the RCS

The RCS supports three different scripts:

- Script #1: Runs after configuration, reconfiguration, and maintenance operations
- Script #2: Runs before unconfiguration operations
- Script #3: Runs after unconfiguration operations

You can define which of these scripts the RCS will use and where they are located. The scripts can be located on any computer in the network that the RCS can access. The scripts are defined via the Console in the Configuration Scripts tab (see Defining the RCS Settings on page 73).

#### **Note:**

- Make sure that the RCS has read and execute permissions on the scripts and the folder where the scripts are located.
- Scripts #2 and #3 will NOT run on systems with Intel AMT 6.2 and higher if they are configured in Client Control mode. This is because for these systems unconfiguration is always done locally by the Configurator. Also, the Unconfigure command does not support the /FileToRun parameter used by the Configurator to run scripts locally.

This table describes the parameters and the sequence in which the RCS sends them to script #1.

#	Description
1	The type of operation that was done on the Intel AMT device:
	• 1 = Configuration
	• 2 = Reconfiguration
	• 3 = Maintenance
2	The status of the operation :
	• 0 = Succeeded
	<ul> <li>32 = Completed with warnings</li> </ul>
3	The FQDN defined in the Intel AMT device
4	The IP address defined in the Intel AMT device
5	The UUID of the Intel AMT device
6	The Intel MEBX password of the Intel AMT device*
7	The password of the default Administrator ("admin") user in the Intel AMT device $st$
8	The RFB password defined in the Intel AMT device for port 5900*
String Example:	
1 0 myamtname.example.com 192.168.1.10 88888888-8887-8888-8888-87888888888888	
mebxpassword adminpassword rfbpassword	
(Parameters marked with an asterisk ( $^{\star}$ ) are sent to the script in Base64 format)	

This table describes the parameters and the sequence in which the RCS sends them to scripts #2 and #3.

#### Table 6-2: Parameters Sent by the RCS to the Scripts #2 and #3

#	Description
1	The FQDN defined in the Intel AMT device
2	The UUID of the Intel AMT device

### 6.19.2 Scripts Run by the Configurator

Scripts run by the Configurator are only run on Intel AMT systems that support host-based configuration (Intel AMT 6.2 and higher). The script must be put in a location that the Configurator can access from the Intel AMT system. The Configurator can run a script after configuration, reconfiguration, and maintenance operations done with these commands:

- ConfigAMT
- MaintainAMT

This table describes the CLI parameters of these commands used to run scripts.

Parameter	Description
/FileToRun <filename> These additional op</filename>	If this parameter is supplied, the Configurator will run this executable file (batch, script, or executable) after the command has completed. If the /FileToRun parameter is used without the /LowSecurity global option, the file must be digitally signed (see Digital Signing of Files on page 10). If the file is not signed, the Configurator will NOT run the CLI command or the file. In addition, if the /LowSecurity parameter is not used, the file must be located in the same folder as the ACUConfig.exe file.
/FileHash <sha256 hash=""></sha256>	When this parameter is supplied, the Configurator runs a hash function on the file supplied in the /FileToRun parameter. The result of the hash function is then compared with the original hash value of the file, supplied in this parameter. If the values of the hashes are different, the Configurator will NOT run the CLI command or the file. (If any change was made to the file, the hash values will not be the same.) Before you can use this option, you must generate a SHA256 hash value from the <filename> file. The sample_files folder includes an application (SHA256.exe) that you can use to generate the hash value. For example: SHA256.exe MyFile.bat will return the hash value of MyFile.bat. The hash value is marked in blue. Copy the value and supply it in the <sha256 hash=""> parameter.</sha256></filename>
/FileUser <password></password>	It is recommended to use this parameter to supply a user with the minimum permissions required to run this file.
/FilePassword <password></password>	Contains the password required to run the file. Valid only if /FileUser was also specified.

This table describes the parameters and the sequence in which the Configurator sends them to the file that you specify in the /FileToRun parameter.

#	Description
1	The user defined in the /FileUser parameter*
2	The password defined in the /FilePassword parameter*
3	The hostname defined in the Intel AMT device
4	The FQDN defined in the Intel AMT device
5	The UUID of the Intel AMT device
6	The Intel MEBX password of the Intel AMT device*
7	The password of the default Administrator ("admin") user in the Intel AMT device $^{*}$
String Example:	

Table 6-4: Parameters Sent by the Configurator to the Script

(Parameters marked with an asterisk (\*) are sent to the script in Base64 format.)

### 6.19.3 Who Runs the Scripts?

Scripts are usually run by the component (Configurator/RCS) that does the requested operation. But, the Intel AMT version, the command you use, and the control mode can all cause different scripts to run.

#### Intel AMT 6.1 and Lower

Operations on these systems can only be done remotely by the RCS. This means that scripts are always run only by the RCS. The Configurator scripts and the /FileToRun parameter (if supplied) are always ignored.

#### Intel AMT 6.2 and Higher

Operations on these systems can be done by the Configurator or the RCS.

- If you use the ConfigViaRCSOnly or MaintainViaRCSOnly commands, only the RCS scripts are run.
- If you use the MaintainAMT command the Configurator scripts will run only if the /FileToRun parameter is used. (The RCS scripts are not supported.)
- If you use the ConfigAMT command:
  - The Configurator scripts will run only if the /FileToRun parameter is used.
  - On unconfigured systems, if the control mode setting in the XML profile is defined as Admin Control mode the RCS scripts will run.

This means that if the /FileToRun parameter is used and the control mode is Admin Control mode, two scripts will run for the system.

### 6.19.4 What if a Failure Occurs?

If a script defined to run before an unconfiguration operation fails, the unconfiguration operation is canceled. Scripts defined to run after configuration, reconfiguration, maintenance, and unconfiguration operations only run if the operation is successful (or completes with warnings). By default, if the script fails, Intel SCS does not make any changes to the Intel AMT settings set by the operation that ran before the script. "Script failure" means that your script returned a non zero exit code, or Intel SCS did not succeed to run the script.

But leaving Intel AMT configured after a post configuration script fails might not be the result you want. If it is critical that your post configuration script will complete successfully, you might prefer to have Intel AMT unconfigured if the script fails.

For post configuration scripts run by the RCS, you can define this by selecting the **Unconfigure Intel AMT if the script fails** check box. When this check box is selected, the RCS will automatically unconfigure Intel AMT if the script fails after any configuration, reconfiguration, or maintenance operation. Note that unconfiguration is not activated for errors returned because the script did not complete within the maximum permitted runtime.

For post configuration scripts run by the Configurator, you can define this using the /AbortOnFailure parameter. When this parameter is supplied, the Configurator will automatically unconfigure Intel AMT if the configuration operation fails or the post configuration script fails. But unconfiguration will only occur if the Intel AMT system was in an unconfigured state when the configuration operation started. The /AbortOnFailure parameter is ignored for reconfiguration and maintenance operations.

### 6.19.5 Script Runtime and Timeout

The maximum permitted runtime for scripts is 60 seconds. If the script does not complete within 60 seconds, the operation that was running when the script was called will return a warning. The warning is recorded in the log file and will contain an error code (0xC0003EAA) and a description like this:

"The supplied script has not finished in the time-out period defined by Intel® SCS"

But for scripts that run before unconfiguration operations, if the script does not complete within 60 seconds an error is returned. This error will prevent the unconfiguration operation from starting.

For scripts run by the RCS you can change the maximum permitted runtime. To do this, enter the new value in the **Maximum time for script execution (in seconds)** field on the Configuration Scripts tab. The minimum value is 1 second and the maximum value is 3600 seconds.

Changing the maximum permitted runtime is not possible for scripts run by the Configurator. If your script requires more than 60 seconds to complete, you can wrap your script with a batch file like this:

```
Start Myscript.bat %1 %2 ...
Exit 0
```

This will cause the operation to return a success code (0). If you do this, your script will be responsible to handle any subsequent errors if they are generated by your script. Script errors will not be recorded in the log.

### 6.19.6 Parameters Sent in Base64 Format

Some of the parameters sent by the Configurator/RCS are sent in Base64 format.

The number of characters sent in the Base64 value representing the parameter must be divisible by 4. If it is not, additional "=" characters are added to the end of the Base64 value. For example, if the Base64 value includes only 6 characters two "=" characters are automatically added.

When Base64 values are sent to a batch file, the command line interpreter removes these additional "=" characters. This means that the parameter value cannot be decoded correctly. To solve this problem, add the missing "=" characters to the Base64 value before decoding it.

### 6.19.7 Script Authentication Mechanism

By default, the RCS does not authenticate the scripts defined via the Console in the Configuration Scripts tab. The RCS will run the scripts that you define, regardless of the content or status of the script file. This default behavior assumes that your network environment setup will prevent attackers from accessing the computer(s) where the RCS and the scripts are located.

If you want to increase security when running scripts, you can enable a script authentication mechanism. To enable this mechanism, select the **Enable script authentication mechanism** check box in the Configuration Scripts tab.

### If you want to use this mechanism:

- All scripts that you define in the Configuration Scripts tab must be digitally signed using a Microsoft Authenticode certificate
- You must make sure that only authorized code signing certificates are trusted by the operating system where the RCS is running
- Script files that cannot be signed, for example batch files, are not permitted

### When this mechanism is enabled:

- Each time the RCS starts, the RCS will try to authenticate all the scripts defined in the Configuration Scripts tab. Also, immediately before running any of these scripts, the RCS will try to authenticate the script. The RCS will only run the script if the digital signature is authenticated successfully.
- Before starting any RCS operation for which a script has been defined to run (before or after the operation), the RCS first tries to authenticate the script. If authentication fails, the associated RCS operation is canceled and does not run.
- When the Unconfigure Intel AMT if the script fails check box is selected, the RCS will try to
  authenticate <u>all</u> the scripts defined in the Configuration Scripts tab. If authentication of any of the scripts
  fails, the RCS operation (configuration, reconfiguration, or maintenance) is canceled and does not run.
  This also means that the script is canceled and no changes are made to the current Intel AMT settings
  (Intel AMT will not be unconfigured.)
- In addition, when a script fails authentication, the RCS operation for which the script is defined is suspended. All future requests for that type of operation that are sent to the RCS will be denied. Normal functionality for this operation will only be restored after the cause of the authentication failure is fixed.
- For each script authentication failure, the RCS will return an error message and record an error in the log

### Vote:

The scripts authentication mechanism is only available for scripts run by the RCS. If you are using scripts run by the Configurator, you can use the /FileHash parameter instead (see Scripts Run by the Configurator on page 151).

# 6.20 Configurator Return Codes

This table describes the return codes that are shown and recorded in the log file when running Configurator CLI commands.

Table 6-5: Configurator Return Codes

#	Description
0	The requested operation completed successfully
1	Intel AMT is already configured on this system
2	Intel AMT is already unconfigured on this system
3	This system does not have Intel AMT (or it is disabled in the Intel MEBX, or the correct drivers are not installed or enabled)
4	This system supports Intel <sup>®</sup> Small Business Advantage (Intel <sup>®</sup> SBA) and cannot be configured by Intel SCS components. Intel SBA systems were specifically designed for small businesses, and can only be configured using the software included with Intel SBA.
6	The RCS failed to process the request
7	The Intel AMT device does not have a PSK (prerequisite for the requested operation)
8	Invalid command parameter
9	The system is not in Intel AMT mode (check the manageability setting in the Intel MEBX)
10	The manageability mode has been changed to "AMT". You must reboot the system to complete this operation.
11	Failed to change to Intel AMT mode (check the manageability setting in the Intel MEBX)
12	An internal error has occurred in Intel AMT
16	Invalid format used in the new Intel MEBX password parameter (refer to the documentation)
17	Invalid format used in the current Intel MEBX password parameter (refer to the documentation)
18	Cannot write the USB configuration data to file (possible reasons- the specified path does not exist; no write permissions; not enough free space).
19	Failed to create the USB configuration file (invalid IP)
20	Failed to create the USB configuration file (invalid power package)
21	An internal error occurred when creating the USB configuration file
22	An internal exception occurred when processing the request

#	Description
25	The system is already in Intel AMT mode
26	The UsingDHCP parameter was supplied, but DHCP is not active on the host operating system
27	Access denied. Make sure that the user has administrator permissions on the local host or in the Intel AMT device.
30	This Intel AMT device does not support host-based configuration
31	This Intel AMT device is in a state that does not support the ConfigAMT command
32	The requested operation completed, but with warnings
33	Failed to configure this Intel AMT device
34	Failed to do the requested operation. The flash wear-out protection mechanism limits consecutive operations in a certain time period. Try the operation again later.
35	A certificate request was sent to the Certification Authority but the created certificate was put into "Pending Requests" waiting for approval. Intel SCS does not support pending requests.
36	Failed to request the certificate
37	Failed to parse the XML file (possible reasons- the file does not exist or access to it is denied; the file contains incorrect parameters; incorrect or missing encryption password/parameter)
38	Error with XML file (possible reasons- the file does not exist or access to it is denied; the file contains incorrect parameters; incorrect or missing encryption password/parameter; invalid data)
39	The Intel AMT device is in a state that does not support disabling the Client Control mode
40	This system was already unconfigured. The system was successfully put in the "Pre Provisioned" state and the Intel AMT interfaces are now closed.
41	The certificate cannot be retrieved because access to the Certification Authority is denied
42	Failed to write to the file. A possible reason is insufficient permissions in the selected folder.
43	Failed to read from the given file. A possible reason is insufficient permissions in the selected folder.
44	Memory Allocation Error
45	Failed to unconfigure this Intel AMT device
46	Settings defined in the dedicated network settings XML file are not compatible with the network settings defined in the configuration profile
49	Failed to do the requested maintenance tasks on this Intel AMT device
50	The Intel AMT device is in a state that does not support the Maintenance command
51	TLS cannot be configured because cryptography is disabled on this system

#	Description
54	The Intel AMT device cannot be set with the host FQDN and a dedicated FQDN
55	The Intel AMT device cannot be set with the host IP and a dedicated IP
56	An FQDN is mandatory for configuration (supply the FQDN in the NetworkSettings tag of the profile)
57	Setting a static IP to the Intel AMT device from the host dynamic IP is not permitted
58	When defining a static address, the IP and subnet mask parameters are mandatory
59	Failed to find the host IP address and subnet mask to set in the Intel AMT device (possible reasons - the network card is disabled; the network connection is disabled; the network cable is unplugged)
60	Dedicated FQDN is not permitted
61	An invalid IP address was supplied in the parameter
62	Cannot configure an AD object or certificates for the Intel AMT device without a valid FQDN
65	Administrator credentials must be supplied in the XML or CLI to configure the Intel AMT device
66	Failed to reissue certificates because the certificate data is missing in the profile
67	Failed to renew the AD password because the AD data is missing in the profile
68	Invalid parameter was found
70	Failed to connect to the Intel AMT device (possible reasons: the system does not have Intel(R) AMT or is not responding; user access to it is denied)
71	The buffer maximum size supplied in the function is too small
73	Failed to put the system in the "Pre Provisioned" state (you can try to unconfigure the system using the Intel MEBX "Full Unprovision" option)
74	Failed to complete the Setup operation on this Intel AMT device
75	Failed to complete remote configuration of this Intel AMT device
76	The file supplied in the FileToRun parameter returned an error when it was run
77	Missing mandatory parameter
78	Failed to put the Intel AMT device in the "In Provision" state. The Start Configuration operation failed. Examine the Intel MEBX settings to make sure remote configuration is enabled, or a TLS PSK pair is defined.
79	Failed to connect to the Intel Management Engine Interface PTHI client
80	Failed to complete the System Discovery
81	Failed to run the file supplied in the FileToRun parameter

#	Description
82	The FileToRun parameter is not permitted for configuration methods using a Remote Configuration Server
83	The Intel Management Engine Interface driver is not installed or cannot be accessed
84	Invalid data in the profile
85	Failed to move the Intel AMT device to Admin Control mode
86	Failed to get the FQDN
87	Failed to verify the signature of the file supplied in the FileToRun parameter. To cancel this verification, run the command using the LowSecurity global option.
88	The requested operation was aborted because required file access failed
89	The file supplied in the FileToRun parameter is not located in a trusted location. To cancel this prerequisite, run the command using the LowSecurity global option.
90	Failed to get the Digest admin password to put in the Intel AMT device (calculated by the RCS using the Digest Master Password)
91	Failed to get the Digest admin password that is configured in the Intel AMT device
92	Failed to send the Hello Message to the RCS
93	Failed to submit the certificate request to the Certification Authority
94	Failed to get the certificate
95	Failed to generate a TLS-PSK Pair
96	Failed to generate the PKCS10 request
97	Failed to get the FQDN of the Intel AMT device
98	Failed to get the IP address of the Intel AMT device
99	Failed to get the UUID of the Intel AMT device
100	Failed to get the FQDN and the IP address of the Intel AMT device
101	The remote configuration operation completed, but with warnings
102	Failed to retrieve the PID from this Intel AMT device
103	The requested functionality is not supported on this operating system
104	Failed to renew the Digest admin password in the Intel AMT device because the administrator password is missing in the profile

#	Description
105	Failed to read data from the registry. A possible reason is that the registry value does not exist or access to it is denied.
106	Failed to verify the hash of the file supplied in the FileToRun parameter against the Hash supplied in the FileHash parameter
107	The Notify RCS operation failed
108	This Intel AMT system already exists in the database
109	Failed to connect to the RCS
110	Failed to verify the file signature chain. Either connect the computer to the Internet, or manually download and install the root certificate update package from the Microsoft update catalog.

# Chapter 7

# **Monitoring Systems**

This chapter describes how to use the monitoring options, available from the Console, when working in database mode.

For more information, see:

7.1	About Monitoring Intel AMT Systems	.162
7.2	About Adding and Deleting Systems	.163
7.3	Creating a View	164
7.4	Viewing Systems	.167
7.5	Searching for a System.	168
7.6	Sorting the List of Systems	.170
7.7	Changing the Managed State of Systems	.171
7.8	Detecting and Fixing Host FQDN Mismatches	.172
7.9	Getting the Admin Password	174
7.10	Viewing Operation Logs.	175
7.11	Viewing Discovery Data	177
7.12	Configuration States	179

### 7.1 About Monitoring Intel AMT Systems

In database mode, during configuration data about each Intel AMT system is stored in the database. You can use the Monitoring options in the Console to send WMI Query Language (WQL) queries to the database about these systems.

🖥 Intel® SCS Console										
Profiles		Monitoring					🗙 Tools	<b>v</b>	0	
Systems	Jobs									
Views	Search									
Name	Total Systems	Last Operation Failed	Configured	Lost	Unmanaged					
All Systems	5	1	2	1	0					
Host FQDN Mismatch	1	0	1	0	0					
Example View #1	2	1	0	1	0					
Example View #2	3	1	1	1	0					

Figure 7-1: Example of Views

This table describes the options available from the **Monitoring** > **Systems** tab.

Table 7-1:	Monitoring	Options
------------	------------	---------

Use this	To do this
Views Tab	To define and save multiple queries, also known as "Views". You can use these views to filter Intel AMT systems into logical groups. For more information, see:
	Creating a View on page 164
	Viewing Systems on page 167
	The Views tab also includes these built-in default views:
	• All Systems – All systems that exist in the database.
	• Host FQDN Mismatch – See Detecting and Fixing Host FQDN Mismatches on page 172.
	(You cannot edit or delete these default views.)
Search Tab	To quickly find a specific system or group of systems. For more information, see: Searching for a System on page 168.

#### Vote:

You can also use the Views tab and the Search tab, to get data about operation logs and the admin password. For more information, see:

- Getting the Admin Password on page 174
- Viewing Operation Logs on page 175

### 7.2 About Adding and Deleting Systems

You can only use the Console to monitor and maintain systems that exist in the database.

These CLI configuration commands automatically add the systems to the database:

- ConfigViaRCSOnly When you configure systems using this command, they are always added to the database. For information about how to use this command, see Configuring Systems using the RCS on page 130.
- ConfigAMT This command uses an XML profile as part of the unified configuration process. In some conditions, this command does not add the system to the database:
  - Intel AMT 6.1 and lower These systems are always added to the database.
  - Intel AMT 6.2 and higher These systems are added to the database only if the XML profile is defined to put the Intel AMT device in Admin Control mode. This is defined when the profile is exported from the Console. When you export the profile, select the Put locally configured devices in Admin Control mode. check box (see Exporting Profiles from the Console on page 79.) For information about how to use this command, see Configuring Systems (Unified Configuration) on page 129.

Intel SCS includes an additional CLI command (NotifyRCS) that you can use to manually add configured systems to the database. If you have systems that are already configured, but not in the database, you can use this command to add them to the database. You can also use this command to add systems that were configured in Client Control mode using ConfigAMT. For information about how to use this command, see Adding a Configured System on page 132.

If necessary, you can delete systems from the database. For example, when computers are moved, or changes are made to the network, the RCS might lose connection with some systems. The Console can only run jobs and operations on systems to which the RCS can connect.

#### To delete a system:

- 1. In the Console, click **Monitoring** and select the **Systems** tab.
- 2. Locate and select the systems using the Views tab or the Search tab.
- 3. Right-click and select **Delete System**.

#### **Note:**

You cannot delete a system if it is part of a job, and the job is in one of these statuses: "Aborting", "In Progress", and "Loading".

### 7.3 Creating a View

A "view" is a query defined using the WMI Query Language (WQL). You can create several views using different conditions to filter the Intel AMT systems into logical groups.

#### To create a view:

- 1. In the Console, click **Monitoring**.
- 2. Select the **Systems** > **Views** tab and click **I**. The View Definition window opens.

🛃 View Definition			<u> </u>
Description Define a collection of systems that mat View Name: Search Filter	ch the criteria you specify below	۷.	
ID Operator Field	Field Operator	Value	
A UUID	▼ starts with ▼	×	
Customize operator precedence A e.g. (A OR B) AND C		Add Row	
		OK Car	ncel

Figure 7-2: View Definition Window

- 3. In the View Name field, enter a descriptive name for this view.
- 4. Define the filter conditions as described in Defining a System Filter on the next page.
- 5. Click **OK**. The View Definition window closes and the view is added to the list of views.

### 7.3.1 Defining a System Filter

The search filter defines which systems are included in a view. A job can be defined based on an existing view or a search filter that you define in the job. When you create a view or a job, the systems that match the filter are added to the view/job.

### To define a system filter:

1. Define the filter condition in row A, as described in this table.

Field	Field Operator	Value				
UUID	<ul><li>starts with</li><li>ends with</li></ul>	A string containing the required part of the system's UUID that you want to include in the filter				
Intel AMT FQDN	<ul><li> contains</li><li> equals</li></ul>	A string containing the required part of the FQDN defined in the Intel AMT device that you want to include in the filter				
Intel AMT IPv4		A string containing the required part of the IPv4 address of the wired LAN interface defined in the Intel AMT device that you want to include in the filter				
Version		The Intel AMT version				
Last Configuration Time	• >= • <	By default, the Value field of these options contains the current date and time. You can edit the value directly in the				
Last Connection Time		field or click the drop-down list arrow to select a date from a calendar.				
Status	in	From the drop-down list, select one or more configuration states (see Configuration States on page 179). Hold down the <ctrl> or <shift> keys during selection.</shift></ctrl>				
Profile	in	From the drop-down list, select one or more profiles (hold down the <ctrl> or <shift> keys during selection)</shift></ctrl>				
Managed State	in	The managed state:				
		Managed				
		For more information, see Changing the Managed State of				
		Systems on page 171. Note: This field is not available in Jobs.				
Host FQDN State	in	See Detecting and Fixing Host FQDN Mismatches on page 172				

- 2. Optionally, define more filter conditions:
  - a. Click **Add Row**. A new filter condition row is added under the existing row.

ID Occuration	r:-ld	Field On each an		-
ID Operator	Field	Field Operator	valu	e
А	Intel AMT FQDN	starts with	example	$(\mathbf{x})$
B AND 💌	UUID	contains	55	$\mathbf{x}$
Customize ope	erator precedence			Add Row
A AND B				
e.g. (A OR B) AND	o c			

Figure 7-3: System Filter Example

- b. From the first drop-down list, select one of these operators to define the relationship of this filter condition with the other filter conditions:
  - AND Include the system only if this condition and the previous condition are both true
  - **OR** Include the system if either this condition or the previous condition are true
- c. Define the remaining filter conditions as described in step 1.
- d. Optionally, repeat steps a through c to add additional filter conditions.

✓ Note:	
You can delete a condition by clicking the icon next to the condition.	

- 3. (Optional) You can also customize the operator precedence of the filter condition rows. To do this:
  - a. Select the **Customize Operator Preference** check box.
  - b. Add brackets to the condition ID codes (A, B etc.) to make the changes that you want to the filter.

# 7.4 Viewing Systems

The **Systems** > **Views** tab shows a summary of the number of systems that each view contains. The systems are automatically sorted into these columns in the view:

- Total Systems The total number of systems in the view
- Last Operation Failed The number of systems for which the RCS did not successfully complete the last operation
- **Configured** The number of systems for which configuration completed
- Lost The number of systems to which the RCS could not successfully connect during the last operation
- Unmanaged The number of systems in the "Unmanaged" state

For each view (and column in a view) you can get data about the systems it contains.

#### To get data about systems:

- 1. In the Console, click **Monitoring** and select the **Systems** > **Views** tab.
- 2. Select the view for which you want to get details about the systems that it contains.
- 3. Select a column in the view, right-click, and select one of these:
  - **Show Systems** Shows all the systems in the view. For the Total Systems and Name columns, this is the only available option.
  - Show Systems (this column only) Shows only the systems that are in the column that was selected

The List of Systems window opens.

<b></b>	List of Systems						×
	Intel AMT FQDN 🔺	Intel AMT IPv4	Stat	us	Con	nection status	
	intelamt-7.example.domain	192.168.1.10		Configured	۲	Connected	
	intelamt-7.1.example.domain	192.168.1.11	2	Unknown	$\odot$	Connection status unknown	
	intelamt-6.2.example.domain	192.168.1.14	Q.	Unconfigured	$\odot$	Pending Connection	
	intelamt-6.0.example.domain	192.168.1.13	1	Configuration Failed	$\odot$	Disconnected	
	intelamt-5.4.example.domain	192.168.1.12	Q.	Missing Configuration Data	9	Connected	

Figure 7-4: List of Systems Window

4. Click a system in the list. Data for the selected system is shown in the bottom section of the List of Systems. The profile that was used during the last configuration/reconfiguration operation is shown as a link. You can view the profile details by clicking the link.

For information about other options available from the List of Systems, see:

- Sorting the List of Systems on page 170
- Getting the Admin Password on page 174
- Viewing Operation Logs on page 175

For a list of the possible statuses, see Configuration States on page 179.

### 7.5 Searching for a System

The Search tab lets you quickly send a query to the database to find a specific Intel AMT system or systems.

#### To search for systems:

1. In the Console, click **Monitoring** and select the **Systems** > **Search** tab.

The Search tab opens.

Ē.	Intel® SCS Console
	Profiles Monitoring
	Systems Jobs
	Views Search Systems
	UUID:
	Intel AMT FQDN:
	Intel AMT IPv4:
	Search

Figure 7-5: Search Tab

2. In the available fields, enter the data that you want to use in the query

#### Vote:

The query is constructed using these operators:

- **Contains** This means that in each field you can enter any part of the data that you have. For example, if you enter "555" in the UUID field the query will get data for all systems that have "555" as part of the UUID.
- **And** This means that if you enter values in more than one field the query only gets data of systems that have both those values.

3. Click **Search**. The systems that meet the query conditions are shown in the list of systems in the right pane. If the system you are searching for is not in the list, modify the query and click **Search**.

🚮 Intel® SCS Console						_ 🗆 🗡
Profiles	Monitoring				🔀 Tools	• 🕐
Systems Jobs						
Views Search	Systems					
	Intel AMT FODN	Intel AMT IPv4	Status	Conn	ection status	
	intelamt-7.example.dom	ain 192.168.1.10	Configured	4	Connected	
Intel AMT FQDN: intelamt-7	intelamt-7.1.example.do	omain 192.168.1.11	Unknown	0	Connection status unknown	
Intel AMT IPv4:						
Search						
	intelamt-7.exampl	e.domain (Configure	d)			
	Intel AMT IPv4:	192.168.1.10				
	UUID:	0000000-0001-0000-000	00-00000 1000 50 1			
	Configuration status:	Configured	Last configuration	n time:	2/21/2012 11:43:58 AM	View Log
	Connection status:	Connected	Last connection t	time:	2/21/2012 11:45:31 AM	
	Configuration profile:	Profile1				
	Intel AMT version:	6.1.0				
	Intel AMT SKU:	Intel® vPro™				
	Discovery data					
Connected to a Remote Configuration Se	rvice running on this com	puter				

Figure 7-6: Example of Search Results

4. Click a system in the list. Data for the selected system is shown in the bottom section of the Systems pane. The profile that was used during the last configuration/reconfiguration operation is shown as a link. You can view the profile details by clicking the link.

For information about other options available from the List of Systems, see:

- Sorting the List of Systems on the next page
- Getting the Admin Password on page 174
- Viewing Operation Logs on page 175

For a list of the possible statuses, see Configuration States on page 179.

# 7.6 Sorting the List of Systems

You can define which columns are shown in the list of systems by right-clicking the column header and selecting the columns. You can also sort the contents of the list by double-clicking a column header. You can do this for lists created using the Views tab and the Search tab. This table describes the available data.

Column	Description			
UUID	The Universally Unique Identifier of the Intel AMT device			
Intel AMT FQDN	The FQDN defined in the Intel AMT device			
Intel AMT IPv4	The IPv4 address of the wired LAN interface defined in the Intel AMT device			
Status	The status of the Intel AMT system (see Configuration States on page 179)			
Version	The Intel AMT version			
Profile	The profile that was used the last time that the Intel AMT system was configured			
Active Directory OU	The Organizational Unit in Active Directory where the object representing the Intel AMT system is located			
Sku	The Stock Keeping Unit			
Connection Status	Defines if the RCS can connect to the Intel AMT device			
Last Connection Time	The last date and time that the RCS successfully connected to the Intel AMT device			
Last Configuration Time	The last date and time that the Intel AMT device was configured by the RCS			
Managed State	See Changing the Managed State of Systems on the next page			
Intel AMT FQDN	See Detecting and Fixing Host FQDN Mismatches on page 172			

Table 7-3: Available Data

### 7.7 Changing the Managed State of Systems

Each Intel AMT system stored in the database can be in one of these managed states:

- Managed In this state, you can use all the options available from the Console
- **Unmanaged** In this state, you can only view the system in the Console. You cannot include it in a job, get the password, or run data discovery from the Console. Before you can use the Console options, you must change the managed state of the system to Managed.

#### To change the management state:

- 1. In the Console, click **Monitoring** and select the **Systems** tab.
- 2. Locate the umanaged systems using the Views tab or the Search tab.

Vote:
In the Views tab, umanaged systems are shown in the Unmanaged column. To view only these systems, right-click this column and select <b>Show Systems (this column only)</b> .

3. Select the system (or systems), right click, and select **Move to Managed State**.

¢	List of Systems							
1								
			1.00					_
	Intel AMT FQDN	Intel AMT IPv4	Status	Connection status				
	ntelamt-7.example.domain 192.168.1.10		Unknown	Sea Connected		Get Configured Password		
						Delete System	Del	
					Move to Managed State			

Figure 7-7: Move to Managed State Option

The systems are moved to the Managed state and you can use all the options available from the Console.



### 7.8 Detecting and Fixing Host FQDN Mismatches

The source used to configure the FQDN setting (hostname.suffix) in the Intel AMT device is defined in the configuration profile. The profile includes several options that you can use to define how the FQDN of the device will be constructed (see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on page 120).

When changes are made to the host computer or the network environment, the basis on which the FQDN setting was constructed might change. These changes can include changing the hard disk, replacing the operating system, or re-assigning the computer to a different user. If the FQDN setting in the Intel AMT device is not updated with these changes, problems can occur.

For example, many organizations use the name of the computer user as part of the hostname. When reassigning a computer to a different user, they reconfigure the hostname in the operating system with the name of the new user. During support calls the support personnel use this hostname to locate and identify the computer in the network. If the FQDN setting of the Intel AMT device contains the old hostname, they might not be able to locate or connect to the correct device.

Intel SCS includes options that you can use to detect and fix these "mismatches".

#### Vote:

The options described in this section are not available if you are using a dedicated network settings file to set the FQDN.

### **Viewing Host FQDN Mismatches**

The **Monitoring** > **Views** tab includes a default view named "Host FQDN Mismatch". This view only includes systems in the database that match this filter:

- Managed State = Managed
- Host FQDN State = Mismatch

For each system in the database, the Host FQDN State can be one of these values:

- Unknown This is the value of all systems when they are first added to the database, or after a
  mismatch was fixed. These systems will remain in this state until discovery data is sent from the
  Configurator. When the discovery data is updated, the system will be moved to the Synchronized or the
  Mismatch state.
- **Synchronized** The FQDN setting in the device and the profile are the same.
- **Mismatch** The FQDN setting in the device does NOT match the FQDN setting currently defined in the profile associated with that system. These systems will remain in this state until the mismatch is "fixed". After the mismatch is fixed, the system will be moved to the Unknown state.

#### Vote:

Even if mismatches exist, the Host FQDN Mismatch view will remain empty until you send discovery data from the Configurator. To do this, see Detecting Host FQDN Mismatches on the next page.

### **Detecting Host FQDN Mismatches**

Host FQDN mismatches are detected using the /ReportToRCS parameter of the Configurator CLI SystemDiscovery command. For example:

ACUConfig.exe SystemDiscovery /ReportToRCS /AdminPassword <password> /RCSAddress <RCSAddress>

For the full syntax of this command, see Discovering Systems on page 126.

This is what occurs (for each system) when you use this parameter:

- 1. The discovery data is sent to the RCS and added/updated in the record of the Intel AMT system in the database. This data includes all the network related settings that are currently defined in the host operating system and the Intel AMT device. You can view this data in the Host Based tab of the Discovery Data window (in the "Intel AMT" entry).
- 2. The RCS uses the discovery data to compare the FQDN setting in the device with the FQDN setting defined in the profile.
- 3. The RCS updates the value of the Host FQDN State property of the system:
  - **Synchronized** If the settings match.
  - **Mismatch** If the settings do not match. These systems are shown in the Host FQDN Mismatch view (see Viewing Host FQDN Mismatches on the previous page).

### **Note:**

- New mismatches can occur at any time. The RCS is only updated with new mismatches when you run the SystemDiscovery command with the /ReportToRCS parameter. Thus it is recommended to run this command and parameter at regular intervals.
- For information about how to fix the mismatches, see Fixing Host FQDN Mismatches below.

### **Fixing Host FQDN Mismatches**

Host FQDN mismatches are fixed using jobs.

#### To fix host FQDN mismatches using a job:

- 1. Create a job. In the Job Definition window, select these options:
  - From the drop-down list in the Filter section, select **Host FQDN Mismatch**.
  - From the Operation drop-down list, select Fix host FQDN mismatch.

### Vote:

- Fix host FQDN mismatch is the only job operation type that can always correctly fix Host FQDN mismatches.
- You can create a recurring job that will automatically run and fix mismatches on any systems that are added to the Host FQDN Mismatch view.
- 2. Complete the rest of the job definitions that you want to define for this job (see Creating a Job on page 185).
- 3. When the job runs, the RCS tries to configure the correct FQDN in each Intel AMT device. When a mismatch is fixed, the Host FQDN State of the system is changed to Unknown.
- 4. When the job is in the Completed status (see Job Statuses on page 185), make sure that the mismatches were fixed. You can do this by opening the List of Systems in Job window (see Viewing Job Items on page 187). Each system with a Status of "Completed Successfully" will no longer be included in the Host FQDN Mismatch view.
- 5. Update the discovery data of these systems so that the RCS can change the Host FQDN State of the system to Synchronized (see Detecting Host FQDN Mismatches on the previous page).

# 7.9 Getting the Admin Password

In database mode, you can use the Console to send a query via the RCS to verify the Digest admin password defined in the Intel AMT device. The RCS tries to connect to the device using the password defined in the database for the selected system. If this fails, the RCS tries the admin passwords defined in the configuration profiles. If a Digest Master Password file exists, the RCS will also try the passwords that the file contains. If connection is successful, the RCS shows the password and updates the password in the database if necessary.

### To get the Admin password:

- 1. In the Console, click **Monitoring** and select the **Systems** tab.
- 2. Locate and select the system using the Views tab or the Search tab. Data for the selected system is shown in the bottom section of the window.
- 3. Right-click the system and select **Get Configured Password**. The View System's Password window opens.



Figure 7-8: View System's Password Window

4. To view the password, select **Show password**. The password is shown.

# 7.10 Viewing Operation Logs

Data about each operation that the RCS does on a system is stored in the database. Two records are created for each operation:

- **Start Record** This record is created when the operation starts and contains the word "Start" in the name of the operation. The description field of this record contains a list of the parameters that were used during the operation. You can use this data to troubleshoot what happened if problems have occurred.
- **Finish Record** This record is created when the operation finishes. The description field of this record shows details of problems that occurred. For these records, the Severity level column can show one of these:
  - Success The operation completed successfully
  - Completed with warnings The operation completed, but some errors occurred. For configuration/reconfiguration operations, this means that the system was configured, but not all settings were set successfully.
  - Error The operation failed

### To view operation logs of a system:

- 1. In the Console, click **Monitoring** and select the **Systems** tab.
- 2. Locate and select the system using the Views tab or the Search tab. Data for the selected system is shown in the bottom section of the window.

### **Note:**

You can also view the logs in the List of Systems in Job window (see Viewing Job Items on page 187).

3. Click **View Log**. The Operation Logs window opens.

Operation Logs					
Severity	Date and time 💌	Operation			
Information	11/28/2011 1:19:46 PM	Reconfiguration	- (Start)		
Success	11/28/2011 1:20:03 PM	Reconfiguration			
Information	11/29/2011 8:13:12 AM	Reconfiguration	- (Start)		
Success	11/29/2011 8:13:29 AM	Reconfiguration			
Information	11/29/2011 8:16:19 AM	Reconfiguration	- (Start)		
🛕 Completed with	warning 11/29/2011 8:16:37 AM	Reconfiguration			
💧 Reconfigur	ation				
UUID:	0000000-0001-0000-0000-00000100	00501	Error code:	3221227479	
Intel AMT FQDN:	IntelAMT-7.example.domain		Time and Date:	11/29/2011 8:16:37	7 AM
Intel AMT IPv4:	192.168.1.10		Server name:	Server.example.dor	main
Description:					
Intel(R) AMT Opera enabled using the I (R) SCS.	ation completed with warnings: The IDER Intel(R) SCS. The SOL is disabled in the M	is disabled in the MEI IEBx of the Intel(R) A	Bx of the Intel(R) A MT system and can	MT system and cannot not be enabled using t	be he Intel
0				Refresh	Close

Figure 7-9: Operation Logs Window

### **Note:**

Clicking **Copy All** copies the data for the selected record to the clipboard. You can then paste the data (Ctrl + V) to a text editor.

# 7.11 Viewing Discovery Data

The Discovery Data window lets you view data collected by the Configurator and the RCS. For more information about the discovery options, see What are the Discovery Options? on page 3.

### **Note:**

The data collected by the Configurator and the RCS is stored separately in the database for each system. This means that there can be duplicate data for the same system, and even contradicting data. The last date and time that each of the Intel SCS components got data from the system is shown in the Console.

### To view discovery data of a single system:

- 1. In the Console, click **Monitoring** and select the **Systems** tab.
- 2. Locate and select the system using the Views tab or the Search tab. Data for the selected system is shown in the bottom section of the window.

#### **Note:**

You can also view the discovery data in the List of Systems in Job window (see Viewing Job Items on page 187).

3. Click **Discovery Data**. The Discovery Data window opens.

🛗 Discovery Da	ta	_ 🗆 🗵
Host Based	Remote	
UUID: 00 FQDN: int	000000-0001-0000-0000-000001000501 relamt-6.example.domain	
Intel AM	T (last discovery time: 1/21/2013 3:48:40 PM)	
E Systa B C B N C C B N C C C C C C C C C C C C C	emDiscovery ieneralInfo IanageabilityInfo JSInfo letworkInfo ConfigurationInfo	



The Discovery Data window includes two tabs:

- Host Based This tab contains data collected locally on the system and sent to the RCS. If data exists, click **Expand** to show the data. In the tree view, expand the nodes to see the data that they contain.
- **Remote** Contains data collected (remotely) by the RCS.

4. To view/get remote discovery data, select the **Remote** tab. The Remote tab opens.



Figure 7-11: Remote Tab

5. If data does not exist, click **Discover** to send a new query to the system (via the RCS) and update the database. When the query has completed, the data is shown in a tree view. You can expand the nodes to see the data that they contain. Each time that you click Discover, a new query is sent to the system.

### To get data for multiple systems:

- 1. In the Console, create a job (see Creating a Job on page 185).
- 2. When you create the job, select the **Get discovery data** option from the Operation drop-down list.
- 3. After you run the job, you can also view the discovery data of each system in the List of Systems in Job window (see Viewing Job Items on page 187).

# 7.12 Configuration States

Each Intel AMT system stored in the database can be in one of these configuration states:

- **Configured** The system is configured
- Configuration Failed The RCS failed to configure the system
- **Configuration Update Failed** The RCS failed to perform a configuration update on the system
- **Unconfiguration Failed** The RCS failed to unconfigure the system and the system's configuration status is not known
- **Missing Configuration Data** A configuration request was received but it is missing some data, such as a profile
- **Pending Configuration** A configuration request exists but has not yet been performed on the system
- **Pending Configuration Update** A configuration update request exists but has not yet been performed on the system
- **Pending Unconfiguration** An unconfiguration request exists but has not yet been performed on the system
- **Unconfigured** The system is unconfigured
- **Pending Hello Message** An entry for the system has been added to the database. The system will be configured when the Service receives a "Hello" message sent by the system or the Activator. Repeated Hello messages sent from the same IP address within ~10 seconds are ignored.
- **FQDN in use by other system** An Intel AMT system with a different UUID has been configured with this FQDN
- **Unknown** The RCS does not know the status of the system

# **Chapter 8**

# Managing Jobs and Operations

This chapter describes how to use the jobs options, available from the Console, when working in database mode.

### 🛛 Note:

You can only use these options on systems that exist in the database and are in the Managed state.

For more information, see:

8.1	About Jobs and Operations	181
8.2	Viewing the List of Jobs.	182
8.3	Job Operation Types	183
8.4	Job Statuses	185
8.5	Creating a Job	185
8.6	Viewing Job Items	187
8.7	Starting, Aborting, and Deleting Jobs	189

# 8.1 About Jobs and Operations

A "job" is an operation that you can run from the Console on a selected group of Intel AMT systems, defined using a filter.

The **Monitoring** > **Jobs** tab shows a summary of all existing jobs.

🖥 Intel® SCS Co	nsole									_ 🗆 🗙
Prof	iles	Monitoring					*	Tools	v	0
Systems	Jobs									
		•	_	-		-	-	-	-	
Name	Operation	Status	All Systems	Succeeded	Succeeded with warnings	Failed				
Example Job #1	Partial unconfiguration	Completed	1	1	0	0				
Example Job #2	Configuration	In Progress	5	0	0	0				
Example Job #3	Maintenance	Aborted	3	0	0	3				
Example Job #4	Get discovery data	Scheduled	0	0	0	0				

Figure 8-1: Example of Jobs

This table describes the options available from the Jobs tab.

### Table 8-1: Jobs Tab Options

Click	To do this
	Create a new job (see Creating a Job on page 185)
	Edit the job selected in the list. You can only edit a job if it is in the "Waiting" or "Scheduled" status. Note: You can only edit some of the fields in the job.
<b>*</b> =	Delete the job(s) selected in the list.You can only delete a job if it is in a status of "Scheduled", "Waiting", "Completed", or "Aborted".
	View the systems in a job (see Viewing Job Items on page 187)
	Start a manual job selected in the list (see Starting, Aborting, and Deleting Jobs on page 189)
	Abort the job selected in the list

# 8.2 Viewing the List of Jobs

The number of systems in a job and the status of the systems is shown in the columns of the jobs list. These columns are automatically updated to show the current status of the job and the systems. You can show/hide columns by right-clicking the column header and selecting the columns that you want to show.

Column	Description
Name	The name you defined for the job
Description	The optional description you defined for the job
Operation	The type of operation (see Job Operation Types on the next page)
Status	The status of the job (see Job Statuses on page 185)
All Systems	The total number of systems defined in the job
Succeeded	The number of systems on which the operation completed
Succeeded with Warnings	The number of systems on which the operation completed, but with warnings
Failed	The number of systems on which the operation failed
Waiting for Retry	The number of systems on which the operation could not run, and the RCS is waiting to retry the operation. The RCS includes an automatic retry mechanism for job operations:
	Retry 5 times, each after a pause of 1 minute
	Then retry 5 more times, each after a pause of 1 hour
	<ul> <li>Then retry 5 more times, each after a pause of 24 hours</li> </ul>
	After 15 unsuccessful retry attempts, the system is added to the total number of systems in the Failed column.
In Operation	The number of systems on which the job is currently running
Aborted	The number of systems on which the operation was not run because the job was aborted

# 8.3 Job Operation Types

The operation that you define in a job is run on all systems that are defined in the job. You can define only one operation per job. These are the available types of operation:

### Configuration

This operation reconfigures the systems with the settings defined in the profile that you select from the dropdown list.

✓ Note:
<ul> <li>If the Network Settings (IP and FQDN) were changed in the profile, this operation type will NOT make those changes in the device. This is because the RCS cannot get the necessary information from the host operating system. If you need to reconfigure a device with new network settings, use the configuration commands available from the Configurator.</li> </ul>

• In certain conditions, this operation might fail on unconfigured systems (see Configuration via Jobs Fails because of OTP Setting).

### Full Unconfiguration

This operation deletes all the Intel AMT setup and configuration settings from the systems and disables the Intel AMT features on the systems.

🗹 Note:

This operation type also deletes any root certificate hashes that were entered manually into the Intel MEBX.

### Partial Unconfiguration

This operation removes the configuration settings from the systems and disables the Intel AMT features on the systems. The systems and the RCS can still communicate since the PID, PPS, admin ACL settings, host name, domain name, and the RCS IP and port number are not deleted.

### Vote:

- If the OEM defined the SOL and IDE interfaces to be closed by default, then unconfiguration operations will close them and they cannot be reopened without physical access to the Intel MEBX. This is a known Firmware limitation.
- If auditing was enabled on the Intel AMT system, you cannot run unconfiguration operations unless it is permitted by the auditor.

### Maintenance

This operation runs maintenance tasks on the systems:

- **Synchronize the clock** Synchronizes the clock in the Intel AMT device with the clock of the computer running the RCS. This task is always performed.
- **Renew the Digest Admin password** Renews the password of the Digest admin user according to the password setting defined in the profile. This task is always performed.
- **Re-issue certificates** Re-issues PKI certificates that are close to the expiry date. This task is only run if you select the check box.
- **Renew AD password** Changes the passwords of the ADOU objects representing the Intel AMT systems. This task is only run if you select the check box.

### Vote:

For some of these tasks, the RCS needs data stored in the configuration profile. By default, the RCS uses the profile that was last used to configure the system. If you select a different profile from the drop-down list, the data from the selected profile is used instead.

### **Automatic Maintenance**

This operation runs the maintenance tasks (described in the Maintenance operation) on the systems only if they are necessary. This is possible because Intel SCS saves some configuration related data in the database record of each Intel AMT system. The database record is updated each time that a job is run on the system.

When you use the Automatic Maintenance operation:

- 1. The RCS uses the data in the database to make the decision which maintenance tasks are necessary for each Intel AMT system:
  - Synchronize the clock If not synchronized for more than three months
  - **Renew the Digest Admin password** If the last renewal of the Digest Admin password was more than six months ago
  - **Re-issue certificates** If there are less than 30 days before one of the certificate expiration dates
  - Renew AD password If the last renewal of the ADOU object password was more than six months ago
- 2. The RCS automatically does only the necessary tasks that were identified in step 1. If no tasks are necessary, nothing is done.

### Get Discovery Data

This operation gets Intel AMT related data from the systems (see Viewing Discovery Data on page 177).

### Fix Host FQDN Mismatch

This operation fixes Host FQDN Mismatches (see Detecting and Fixing Host FQDN Mismatches on page 172).

# 8.4 Job Statuses

A job can be in one of these statuses (shown in the Status column of the list of jobs):

- **Scheduled** The job was defined to start automatically at a specific date and time in the future. Jobs in this status can also be recurring jobs that will automatically run according to an interval (of days) that you define.
- **Preparing Job** A manual job was created and the RCS is currently preparing the list of systems on which the job will run. When complete, the status of the job will change to "Waiting".
- **Waiting** The job has not started yet. This is the status of all new manual jobs until you start the job (see Starting, Aborting, and Deleting Jobs on page 189).
- **In Progress** The job has started to run. The job will stay in this status until the operation has run on all systems, or the job is aborted.
- **Completed** The job was run on all systems. This does not mean that the job was successful on all the systems. (The other columns in the list of jobs show the status summary.) This status is only relevant for non-recurring jobs. After a recurring job has completed, the status of the job will change to Scheduled.
- **Aborting** The job was aborted, but the operation is still running on the systems where it had already started to run before the job was aborted. After the operation has run on all systems where it is already running:
  - For non-recurring jobs, the status of the job will change to Aborted.
  - For recurring jobs, the status of the job will change to Scheduled.
- **Aborted** The job was aborted and the operation has run on all the systems where it had already started to run before the job was aborted.

# 8.5 Creating a Job

You can create two types of jobs:

- **Manual** This type of job only runs once, and must be started manually.
- **Automatic** This type of job is automatically started by the RCS at the time and date that you specify in the job. You can define this type of job to run once, or at specified intervals (a "recurring" job).

### To create a job:

- 1. In the Console, click **Monitoring**.
- 2. Select the **Jobs** tab and click **I**. The Job Definition window opens.

🚮 Job Definitio	on X
_	
Job Name:	Status: New job
Description:	
Filter:	<ul> <li>Use a filter from an existing View</li> <li>Define a unique filter</li> </ul>
Start Job:	<ul> <li>Manually</li> <li>On this date: Feb 21, 2012 13:24</li> <li>Run job every 30</li> <li>days.</li> </ul>
Operation:	
0	Save and Close Cancel

Figure 8-2: Job Definition Window

- 3. In the Job Name field, enter a name for this job.
- 4. (Optional) In the Description field, enter a description for this job. This field is for informational purposes only.

- 5. In the Filter section, define on which systems this job will run:
  - Use a filter from an existing View Select this option to use a filter from an existing view. Select the view from the drop-down list.
  - **Define a unique filter** Select this option to define a filter that will be used in this job only. Click **Define** to define the filter (see Defining a System Filter on page 165).
- 6. In the Start Job section, select when the job will start:
  - **Manually** Select this option to define a manual job. This type of job must be started manually (see Starting, Aborting, and Deleting Jobs on page 189).
  - **On this date** Select this option to define an automatic job. By default, todays date is selected. You can edit the date and time directly in the field, or open a calendar to select a different date. If you want to define a recurring job, select the **Run job every** check box and define the number of days for the interval. The interval can be a minimum of 7 days and a maximum of 365 days.

#### Z Note:

After a recurring job completes, the date defined in the job for the next run is automatically updated. You can also manually change the date, time, and interval of automatic jobs (but only when the status of the job is "Scheduled").

- From the Operation drop-down list, select the type of operation that this job will perform (see Job Operation Types on page 183).
- 8. Click **Save and Close**. The Job Definition window closes and the job is added to the list of jobs.

# 8.6 Viewing Job Items

The systems that match the filter defined in the job are shown in the List of Systems in Job window. These "job items" are the systems on which the job will run.

You can view this list and get data about the systems in the list.

#### 📝 Note:

- For manual jobs, this list only includes systems that matched the filter at the time that the job was created. If more systems are added to the network that match the filter, they will NOT be added to the job.
- For automatic jobs, the systems are added to the list just before the job starts. This means that the job will run on systems that match the filter at the time that the job starts.
- For recurring jobs, the list of systems in the job is automatically updated each time the job starts.

### To view the job items:

- 1. In the Console, click **Monitoring** and select the **Jobs** tab.
- 2. Right-click the job and select **View Systems**. The List of Systems in Job window opens.

UUID: Vaiting Vaiting In Progress Completed Successful Intel AMT FQDN: Aborted Vending Retry Failed Intel AMT IPv4: Search Intel AMT FQDN Status Intelamt-7.example.domain In Progress Intelamt-6.2.example.domain In Progress Intelamt-6.0.example.domain In Progress	Use the below options to narrow your s	earch within the list of systems in	icluded in this job.	
Intel AMT FQDN: Aborted Pending Retry Failed Intel AMT IPv4: Intel AMT FQDN Status Intelamt-7.example.domain In Progress Intelamt-6.2.example.domain In Progress Intelamt-6.0.example.domain In Progress	UUID:	✓ Waiting	In Progress	Completed Successful
Intel AMT IPv4: Search Intel AMT FQDN Status Intelamt-7.example.domain Completed Successfully Intelamt-7.1.example.domain In Progress Intelamt-6.2.example.domain In Progress Intelamt-6.0.example.domain In Progress	Intel AMT FQDN:	Aborted	Pending Retry	Failed
Intel AMT FQDN     Status       intelamt-7.example.domain     Completed Successfully       intelamt-7.1.example.domain     In Progress       intelamt-6.2.example.domain     In Progress       intelamt-6.0.example.domain     In Progress	Intel AMT IPv4:	]		Search
intelamt-7.example.domain In Progress intelamt-6.2.example.domain In Progress intelamt-6.0.example.domain In Progress				
intelamt-7.1.example.domain In Progress intelamt-6.2.example.domain In Progress intelamt-6.0.example.domain In Progress	Intel AMT FODN A Status			
intelamt-6.2.example.domain In Progress intelamt-6.0.example.domain In Progress	Intel AMT FQDN Status intelamt-7.example.domain Complete	d Successfully		
intelamt-6.0.example.domain In Progress	Intel AMT FQDN Status intelamt-7.example.domain Complete intelamt-7.1.example.domain In Progre	d Successfully ss		
	Intel AMT FQDN Status intelamt-7.example.domain Complete intelamt-7.1.example.domain In Progre intelamt-6.2.example.domain In Progre	d Successfully ss ss		

Figure 8-3: List of Systems in Job Window

Z	☑ Note:				
•	You can show/hide systems in the list using the check boxes and the search fields columns and then clicking <b>Search</b> .				
•	If the job status is "Waiting", you can delete systems from the list by right-clicking them and selecting Delete Item from List. If a system is deleted, the operation will not run on that system when the job starts. After a job starts, you cannot delete a system from the job.				

• You can view the operation logs of a system by selecting the system and clicking **View logs**. For more information about logs, see Viewing Operation Logs on page 175.

# 8.7 Starting, Aborting, and Deleting Jobs

Automatic jobs are started automatically by the RCS.

Manual jobs must be started from the Console.

When a job is in the "Completed" or "Scheduled" status, you can delete the job.

### To start a manual job:

In the list of jobs:

• Right-click the job and select **Start Job**.

- Or -

Select the job and click

To delete a job:

In the list of jobs, select the job and click

### About aborting a job

At any time after a job has started, you can abort the job. To do this, in the list of jobs:

• Right-click the job and select Abort Job.

- Or -

Select the job and click

When a job starts, the RCS starts the operation simultaneously on the first 50 systems defined in the job. After 30 seconds, the RCS starts the operation on another set of systems (up to the maximum of 50 systems). This cycle continues until the operation is run on all systems in the job.

### **Note:**

At any time after creating a job, you can check the status of the operation on each system (see Viewing Job Items on page 187).

If you abort a job, the status of the job is changed to "Aborting". Operations that have already started on a system will not be aborted. When the operation has run on those systems, the status of the job is changed to "Aborted" (or "Scheduled" if the job is a recurring job). If an operation is in the "Pending Retry" status, aborting the job will cancel the operation on those systems.

# Chapter 9

# **Preparing the Certification Authority**

This chapter describes the prerequisites and procedures for using a Certification Authority (CA) with Intel SCS. For more information, see:

9.1	About Certification Authorities	191
9.2	Using Intel SCS with a Microsoft CA	.191
9.3	Using Intel SCS with the CA Plugin.	199
9.4	Defining Common Names in the Certificate	.200
9.5	CRL XML Format	202

# 9.1 About Certification Authorities

A CA is necessary if you want to configure any of these settings in an Intel AMT device:

- Remote Access
- Transport Layer Security
- 802.1x Setups
- End-Point Access Control

During configuration of these settings, Intel SCS sends a request to a CA software application to generate a certificate. Intel SCS puts the generated certificate in the Intel AMT device. Intel SCS can request certificates:

- From a Microsoft\* CA This is the default option.
- Via a CA Plugin This option is only available after a plugin is installed.

# 9.2 Using Intel SCS with a Microsoft CA

This section describes the prerequisites necessary to use Intel SCS with a Microsoft CA.

# 9.2.1 Standalone or Enterprise CA

Intel SCS supports the Standalone and Enterprise versions of Microsoft CA. An Enterprise CA can be configured only in conjunction with Active Directory. A Standalone CA can operate with or without Active Directory. (If Active Directory is not present, there can be only one RCS instance and the Standalone CA must be installed on the same server as the RCS.) The Microsoft CA can have a hierarchy of CAs, with subordinate CAs and a root CA. This is beyond the scope of this guide.

These features require a Standalone root CA or an Enterprise root CA:

- Transport Layer Security (including mutual authentication)
- Remote Access with password-based authentication

These features require an Enterprise root CA:

- Remote Access with certificate-based authentication
- 802.1x setups (Wired or WiFi)
- EAC settings

# 9.2.2 Required Permissions on the CA

These permissions are required on the CA by the user account running Intel SCS component doing the configuration:

- Issue and Manage Certificates
- Request Certificates

For an Enterprise root CA you also need to grant this user account the Read and Enroll permissions on the templates you want to select in the configuration profiles.

# 9.2.3 Request Handling

Certification Authorities include settings that define how certificate requests are handled. Intel SCS does not support pending certificate requests. If during configuration the CA puts the certificate into the "Pending Requests" state, Intel SCS returns an error (#35). Thus, you must make sure that the CA and the templates used by Intel SCS are not defined to put certificate requests into a pending state.

For Enterprise and Standalone CAs, request handling is defined in the Request Handling tab (right-click the CA and select **Properties** > **Policy Module** > **Properties**). Make sure that the correct option is selected (shown in yellow in this figure).



Figure 9-1: Request Handling Tab

For Enterprise CAs, you must also make sure that the templates used by Intel SCS are not defined to require approval. Make sure that the **CA certificate manager approval** check box is NOT selected (shown in yellow in this figure).



Figure 9-2: Issuance Requirements Tab

# 9.2.4 Running the CA on Windows 2003

If the RCS is installed on a server running Windows Server 2008 (all x32/64 versions and R2) and the CA is installed on a server running Windows Server 2003:

- 1. On the computer running the CA, select **Start > Run > Dcomcnfg**.
- 2. Select Component Services > Computers.
- 3. Right-click My Computer and select **Properties**.
- 4. Select the **COM Security** tab.
- 5. In the Access Permissions section, click Edit Limits.
- 6. Select the RCS user account and grant it these permissions:
  - Local Access
  - Remote Access

# 9.2.5 Defining Enterprise CA Templates

If you use Intel SCS with an Enterprise CA to configure Intel AMT features to use certificate-based authentication, you must define certificate templates.

### Vote:

This procedure shows how to create a template containing the correct settings for Intel AMT. For settings specific to your organization (such as certificate expiration), specify the values you require. You must also make sure that the CA and the template are not defined to put certificate requests into the pending status. For more information, see Request Handling on the previous page.

### To create a certificate template:

- 1. From your Certificate Authority server, select **Start** > **Run**. The Run window opens.
- 2. Enter **mmc** and click **OK**. The Microsoft Management Console window opens.
- 3. If the Certificate Templates plug-in is not installed, perform these steps:
  - a. Select **File > Add/Remove Snap-in**. The Add/Remove Snap-in window opens.
  - b. Click Add. The Add Standalone Snap-in window opens.
  - c. From the list of available snap-ins, select **Certificate Templates**, click **Add** and then click **Close**. The Add Standalone Snap-in window closes.
  - d. Click **OK**. The Add/Remove Snap-in window closes and the Certificate Templates snap-in is added to the Console Root tree.

4. From the Console Root tree, double-click **Certificate Templates**. The list of templates is shown in the right pane.

🚡 Console1 - [Console Root\Certificate Templates]					
🚡 Eile Action View Fav	orites <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp		_ 8 ×		
Console Root	Template Display Name	Minimum Supported CAs 🛛 🛆	Version 🔺		
Certificate Templates	Smartcard User	Windows 2000	11.1		
	Subordinate Certification A	Windows 2000	5.1		
	Trust List Signing	Windows 2000	3.1		
	User	Windows 2000	3.1		
	User Signature Only	Windows 2000	4.1		
	Web Server	Windows 2000	4.1		
	CA Exchange	Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition	106.0 🖵		
	1		▶		
34 certificate templates					

Figure 9-3: Microsoft Management Console

5. In the right-pane, right-click the **User** template and select **Duplicate Template**. The Properties of New Template window opens.

Properties of New Template	? ×			
Issuance Requirements         Superseded Templates         Extensions         Security           General         Request Handling         Subject Name	irity			
T <u>e</u> mplate display name: Copy of User	-			
Minimum Supported CAs: Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition After you apply changes to this tab, you can no longer change the templat name.	te			
<u>T</u> emplate name: Copy of User	-			
Validity period:     Renewal period:       1     years     6				
Publish certificate in Active Directory     Do not automatically reenroll if a duplicate certificate exists in Active     Directory				
OK Cancel <u>A</u> pply	,			

Figure 9-4: Properties of New Template Window

✓ Note:	
If the CA is installed on a server running Windows Server 2008 (all x32/64 versions and R2 Duplicate Template window opens. Make sure that you select <b>Windows Server 2003 En</b> and click <b>OK</b> .	), the <b>terprise</b>

- 6. Make sure that the **Publish certificate in Active Directory** check box is NOT selected.
- 7. In the Template display name field, enter a meaningful name. For example, name a template used to generate 802.1x client certificates "802.1x".
- 8. Change the validity and renewal periods as required by local policy and click **Apply**.

9. Click the **Request Handling** tab. The Request Handling tab opens.

802.1x User Proj	perties ? X				
Issuance Requir General	rements Superseded Templates Extensions Security Request Handling Subject Name				
<u>P</u> urpose:	Signature and encryption				
	Archive subject's encryption private key				
	☑ Include symmetric algorithms allowed by the subject				
	Delete revoked or expired certificates (do not archive)				
<u>M</u> inimum key si	ze: 1024 💌				
Allow privat	e key to be exported				
Do the following associated with <ul> <li>Enroll subje</li> </ul>	g when the subject is enrolled and when the private key this certificate is used: ct without requiring any user input				
C Prompt the	user during enrollment				
<ul> <li>Prompt the private key</li> </ul>	Prompt the user during enrollment and require user input when the private key is used				
To choose which cryptographic service providers <u>CSPs</u> (CSPs) should be used, click CSPs.					
	OK Cancel Apply				

Figure 9-5: Request Handling Tab

10. Click the **CSPs** button. The CSP Selection window opens.

CSP Selection ?	×		
Choose which cryptographic service providers (CSPs) can be used in requests:			
C <u>R</u> equests can use any CSP available on the subject's computer			
Requests must use one of the following CSPs:			
<u>C</u> SPs:			
<ul> <li>Microsoft Base DSS and Diffie-Hellman Cryptographic Provider</li> <li>Microsoft DH SChannel Cryptographic Provider v1.0</li> <li>Microsoft Enhanced DSS and Diffie-Hellman Cryptographic Prov Microsoft Enhanced RSA and AES Cryptographic Provider</li> <li>Microsoft RSA SChannel Cryptographic Provider</li> <li>Microsoft Strong Cryptographic Provider</li> <li>Schlumberger Cryptographic Service Provider</li> </ul>			
OK Cancel			

Figure 9-6: CSP Selection Window

- 11. In the list of requests, select the **Microsoft Strong Cryptographic Provider** check box and click **OK**. The CSP Selection window closes.
- 12. Click the **Subject Name** tab and select **Supply in the request**.
- 13. Click the **Security** tab. The Security tab opens.
- 14. Make sure that the user running the Configurator (or the group the user is in) is included in the list of users and has the Read and Enroll permissions.

- 15. If this is a template for TLS, do these steps:
  - a. Click the **Extensions** tab. The Extensions tab opens.
  - b. From the list of extensions, select **Application Policies** and click **Edit**. The Edit Application Policies Extension window opens.
  - c. Click **Add**. The Add Application Policy window opens.
  - d. From the list of Application policies, select **Server Authentication** and click **OK** (the Server Authentication policy contains this OID: **1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.1**).
  - e. Click **OK** to return to the Properties of New Template window.

### **Note:**

If you define Mutual TLS in the configuration profile, each application that needs to communicate with the Intel AMT device will need a certificate. In addition to the Server Authentication OID (added in step 15 d), the certificate must contain these OIDs:

- For remote access: 2.16.840.1.113741.1.2.1
- For local access: 2.16.840.1.113741.1.2.2

You can add these OIDs to this template (by clicking **New** in the Add Application Policy window). You must then install a certificate, based on this template, in the certificate store of the user running the application.

- 16. Click **OK**. The Properties of New Template window closes.
- 17. Select Start > Programs > Administrative Tools > Certification Authority.
- 18. From the Console Root tree, select **Certificate Authority** > **Certificate Templates**.
- Right-click in the right pane and select New > Certificate Template to Issue. The Enable Certificate Templates window opens.
- 20. Select the template that you just created and click **OK**. The Enable Certificate Templates window closes and the template is added to the right pane with the other certificate templates.
- 21. Restart the CA (to publish the new template in the Active Directory).

# 9.3 Using Intel SCS with the CA Plugin

By default, Intel SCS requests certificates from a Microsoft CA. Intel SCS can also request certificates from other types of CA by using a "CA plugin". The plugin is installed on the computer running the RCS. Each time that the RCS starts, the plugin is automatically loaded (only one CA plugin can be loaded).

After the plugin is loaded, these fields are shown in each profile window that contains certificate-based authentication options (Remote Access, TLS, 802.1x, EAC):

Certificate Authority:	•		
Certificate Info:			
Certificate Secure Info:	0		

### Vote:

- The RCS only loads plugins that are compatible with Intel SCS.
- You can only use the CA plugin option with the ConfigViaRCSOnly command sent from the Configurator. No other options are supported.

### To setup and use the CA plugin:

- 1. On the computer running the RCS, install the CA plugin as described in the installation instructions provided with the plugin.
- 2. After restarting the RCS, open the console and check that the plugin was successfully loaded (see Certification Authority Plugin on page 76).
- 3. In the relevant profile window, from the Select the method for creating the certificate drop-down list, select Request certificate via CA Plugin.
- 4. When the plugin option is selected, these fields are shown:
  - Certificate Authority
  - Certificate Info
  - Certificate Secure Info

The values that you enter in these fields are not validated by the RCS. If you leave them empty, the default values defined by the plugin will be used. Refer to the plugin documentation for more information.

5. Define the Common Names that will be included in the Subject Name of the generated certificate. For more information, see Defining Common Names in the Certificate on the next page.

# 9.4 Defining Common Names in the Certificate

The certificate generated by the CA includes Common Names (CNs) in the Subject field and the Subject Alternative Name field.

You can use these options in the profile to define the CNs in the generated certificate:



These fields are shown in each profile window that contains certificate-based authentication options (Remote Access, TLS, 802.1x, EAC).

### Default CNs

When you select **Default CNs**, the generated certificate will include these CNs:

- In the Subject field: DNS Host Name (FQDN)
- In the Subject Alternative Name field:
  - DNS Host Name (FQDN)
  - Host Name
  - SAM Account Name (Active Directory account name for the Intel AMT object)
  - User Principal Name
  - UUID of the Intel AMT system

### **User-defined CNs**

This option lets you control which CNs will be included in the generated certificate, and which CN will be put in the Subject Name field.



### To define user-defined common names:

- 1. Select User-defined CNs.
- 2. Click Edit CNs. The Advanced Common Name window opens.



Figure 9-7: Advanced Common Name Window

- 3. From the Available Common Names list, select the required CNs and click 😒 to add them to the Selected Common Names list. All the selected CNs will be put in the Subject Alternative Name field of the certificate.
- 4. From the drop-down list, select a CN (from the list of Selected Common Names). This CN will be put in the Subject Name field of the certificate (in addition to the Subject Alternative Name field).
- 5. Click **OK**. The Advanced Common Name window closes.

# 9.5 CRL XML Format

If you are using mutual authentication, you can also configure the Intel AMT device with data from a Certificate Revocation List (CRL). Intel SCS does not use the original CRL file supplied by the Certification Authority. The information from the CRL file must be placed in the <CRLs> tag of the configuration profile.

You can use the Configuration Profile Wizard to import the CRL into the configuration profile (see Defining Advanced Mutual Authentication Settings on page 105).

### 📝 Note:

The profile can contain a maximum of four CRLs. The combined CRLs can contain a maximum total of 64 serial numbers.

This is an example of the XML format required by the Configuration Profile Wizard:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--
This file maps the untrusted certificates serial number to the URI of the
issuer
The URI value represents a valid CRL distribution point of a Certificate
Authority.
-->
<crl>
<uri name="http://certification.authority.example.1.CRL">
<cert serialnumber="15 27 82 20 00 00 00 00 00 01"/>
<cert serialnumber="15-27-82-20-00-00-00-00-02"/>
<cert serialnumber="1527822000000000003"/>
</uri>
<uri name="http://certification.authority.example.2.CRL">
<cert serialnumber="15 27 82 20 00 00 00 00 00 04"/>
<cert serialnumber="15 27 82 20 00 00 00 00 00 05"/>
</uri>
</crl>
```

For the serial number attribute:

- Use exactly two hexadecimal characters for each byte (a byte with a single character will be ignored).
- The serial number can be represented as a single hexadecimal number. If the bytes are separated from each other, use any printable non-hexadecimal character separator between each pair.

# Chapter 10

# Setting up Remote Configuration

This chapter describes the prerequisites and procedures to setup remote configuration.

For more information, see:

10.1	About Remote Configuration	204
10.2	Prerequisites for Remote Configuration.	205
10.3	Selecting the Remote Configuration Certificate.	205
10.4	Acquiring and Installing a Vendor Supplied Certificate.	206
10.5	Creating and Installing Your Own Certificate	208
10.6	Remote Configuration Using Scripts	212

# **10.1 About Remote Configuration**

This section describes concepts and terms related to the remote configuration option of Intel AMT.

- **Embedded Hashed Root Certificates** The Intel AMT system contains one or more root certificate hashes from worldwide SSL certificate providers in the firmware image. When the RCS authenticates to the Intel AMT system, it must do so with a certificate compatible with one of the hashed root certificates.
- **Self-signed Certificate** The Intel AMT system produces a self-signed certificate from which the public key can be passed to the RCS.
- Limited Network Access The Configurator opens the network interface of the Intel AMT system to send the configuration request. After 24 hours, the interface automatically closes if the setup and configuration is not completed.
- One Time Password (OTP) This (optional) feature can be used to make sure that the RCS will only respond to legitimate remote configuration requests. Before the configuration request is sent to the RCS, an OTP can be set in the Intel AMT device. This OTP can then be sent to the RCS as part of the configuration request. If the RCS is defined to require an OTP, the RCS asks the device to provide the OTP that was set. The RCS compares the OTP sent from the device with the OTP that was sent in the configuration request. If the OTPs are not the same, the RCS will not start the configuration. (The RCS always ignores OTPs sent from systems with Intel AMT 3.x and lower.)

By default, the RCS is defined to require this OTP validation. You can change this default (see Defining the RCS Settings on page 73). These are the main reasons that you might want to remove this OTP validation:

- If you want to use WMI commands to send remote configuration requests without an OTP. (For increased security, the Configurator always sends the OTP in the configuration request.)
- If you want to use jobs to configure unconfigured systems using the RCS (see Configuration via Jobs Fails because of OTP Setting on page 224).
- **Simplified One-Touch** An IT administrator can enter the RCS FQDN or PKI DNS Suffix via the Intel MEBX menu or with a USB key. The Intel AMT system verifies that the FQDN in the RCS certificate matches the entered value. This feature is also known as Secure DNS since providing an FQDN or PKI DNS Suffix is more secure than depending on DHCP option 15.
- Bare Metal Setup and Configuration The Intel AMT device can be predefined by the manufacturer to start sending Hello messages as soon as the system is connected to power and to the network. This can occur even if an operating system is not installed on the host system (thus the name "bare metal"). The RCS then configures the system using a script (see Remote Configuration Using Scripts on page 212).

# **10.2 Prerequisites for Remote Configuration**

Before remote configuration can begin, these initial conditions must be met:

- The Intel AMT device must have at least one active hash certificate defined in the Intel MEBX.
- The Intel AMT system must be configured to receive its IP address from a DHCP server. The DHCP server must support option 15 and return the local domain suffix.
- The computer running the RCS must have a certificate with the Server Authentication Certificate OID (1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.1) and also contain one of these:

• An OID in the Extended Key Usage field with this value: 2.16.840.1.113741.1.2.3

- Or -

• In the Subject Name field, an OU with this value:

OU=Intel(R) Client Setup Certificate.

In the Certification Path of this certificate, the thumbprint of the root certificate must be enabled in the Intel AMT hash table.

- The Suffix of the Common Name (CN) in the Subject Name of the RCS certificate must match the domain suffix of the Intel AMT system (see Selecting the Remote Configuration Certificate below).
- For "Bare Metal Setup and Configuration" only: The computer running the RCS must have an alias record with the name "Provisionserver" in the DNS server (or the name defined by the manufacturer in the Intel MEBX). The Intel AMT system must be able to access this DNS server.
- Windows Server 2008 and higher include an option to create a custom certificate request using the MMC Certificate snap-in. If you use this option, make sure that this option is NOT selected in the Template drop-down list: (No Template) CNG Key. The CNG Key option is selected by default in the Certificate Enrollment wizard but is not supported by Intel SCS. You must change the selected Template to be: (No Template) Legacy Key.

# **10.3 Selecting the Remote Configuration Certificate**

Intel AMT validates the RCS remote configuration certificate by comparing a domain suffix or FQDN against the CN in the certificate. Different Intel AMT versions perform this comparison in different ways. This can have an impact on the certificate that an organization acquires. If your network includes a mixture of Intel AMT versions, you must acquire a certificate that is appropriate for all the versions that will be configured.

For more information and guidelines about how to select this certificate, refer to this document: "An Introduction to Intel AMT Remote Configuration Certificate Selection" available at: https://downloadcenter.intel.com/Detail\_Desc.aspx?agr=Y&DwnldID=21729

# 10.4 Acquiring and Installing a Vendor Supplied Certificate

Contact one of the vendors whose root certificate hashes are built into the Intel AMT firmware. A list of the hashes should be provided by the system vendor. Go to the vendor's website and purchase an "SSL certificate".

These settings are necessary for the certificate to be compatible for remote configuration use:

- The OU or the OID must match the values defined in Selecting the Remote Configuration Certificate on the previous page (the OU is the usual value entered when purchasing a certificate commercially).
- The CN must match the Intel AMT system domain suffix (see Selecting the Remote Configuration Certificate on the previous page).
- The keys should be exportable to support IT key backup policies.
- The request type should be PKCS10.

After completion, export the acquired certificate in p7c format.

### 10.4.1 Installing a Vendor Certificate

You can install more than one certificate into the certificate store of the user account running the RCS (RCSServer.exe). The RCS selects the certificate suitable for the specific Intel AMT system.

To install a certificate in the RCS users certificate store:

- 1. On the computer where the RCS is installed, log in as the user running the RCS.
- 2. Open a command prompt window, enter mmc and press <Enter>. The Microsoft Management Console window opens.
- 3. If the Certificates plug-in is not installed, perform these steps:
  - a. Select File > Add/Remove Snap-in. The Add/Remove Snap-in window opens.
  - b. Click **Add**. The Add Standalone Snap-in window opens.
  - c. From the list of available snap-ins, select **Certificates** and click **Add**. The Certificates snap-in window opens.
  - d. Select My user account and click Finish. The Certificates snap-in window closes.
  - e. Click **Close**. The Add Standalone Snap-in window closes.
  - f. Click **OK**. The Add/Remove Snap-in window closes and the Certificates snap-in is added to the Console Root tree.
- From the Console Root tree, right-click Certificates > Personal and select All Tasks > Import. The Certificate Import Wizard opens.
- 5. Click **Next**. The File to Import window opens.
- 6. Enter the path and file name of the certificate to be imported or click **Browse** and navigate to the file.

7. Click **Next**. The Password window opens.

### **Note:**

If the check box named **Enable strong private key protection** can be selected, make sure that it is NOT selected.

sworu	
To maintain security, the pr	rivate key was protected with a password.
Type the password for the	private key,
Password:	
Enable strong privat	e key protection. You will be promoted every time the
Enable strong privat private key is used b	e key protection. You will be prompted every time the by an application if you enable this option.
Enable strong privat private key is used b	e key protection. You will be prompted every time the by an application if you enable this option.
<ul> <li>Enable strong privat private key is used b</li> <li>Mark this key as exp keys at a later time.</li> </ul>	e key protection. You will be prompted every time the by an application if you enable this option. <b>Portable. This will allow you to back up or transport your</b>
<ul> <li>Enable strong privat private key is used t</li> <li>Mark this key as exp keys at a later time.</li> </ul>	e key protection. You will be prompted every time the by an application if you enable this option. <b>Portable. This will allow you to back up or transport your</b>

Figure 10-1: Certificate Import Wizard

- 8. Enter the password for the private key.
- 9. Select the **Mark this key as exportable** check box.
- 10. Click Next.
- 11. Select **Place all certificates in the following store**. The Personal certificate store should already be selected.
- 12. Click **Next** and **Finish**.

# 10.4.2 Installing a Root Certificate and Intermediate Certificates

If the SSL certificate comes from a CA whose "chain of trust" certificates are not automatically included in the Window 2003 trusted certificates store, it will be necessary to install the root certificate and any intermediate certificates in the local computer store of the computer running the RCS (RCSServer.exe).

### To save the root certificate:

- 1. Retrieve the root certificate and the certificates of any intermediate CAs, according to the instructions of the certificate vendor. It may be possible to download them from the vendor website, or the vendor may e-mail the trusted root. Save the certificate in .cer format.
- 2. Navigate to each stored certificate, right-click and select **Install certificate**. A certificate manager Import Wizard opens.
- 3. Click Next.
- 4. Select Automatically select the certificate store based on the type of the certificate and click OK.
- 5. Click **Next** then **Finish**.
- 6. When prompted if you want to add the certificate to the root store, click **Yes**.

# 10.5 Creating and Installing Your Own Certificate

These section describes how you can install your own certificate to enable remote configuration.

## 10.5.1 Creating a Certificate Template

This procedure describes how to create a remote configuration certificate.

### To create the certificate template:

- 1. From your Certificate Authority server, select **Start** > **Run**. The Run window opens.
- 2. Enter mmc and click **OK**. The Microsoft Management Console window opens.
- 3. If the Certificate Templates plug-in is not installed, perform these steps:
  - a. Select File > Add/Remove Snap-in. The Add/Remove Snap-in window opens.
  - b. Click Add. The Add Standalone Snap-in window opens.
  - c. From the list of available snap-ins, select **Certificate Templates**, click **Add** and then click **Close**. The Add Standalone Snap-in window closes.
  - d. Click **OK**. The Add/Remove Snap-in window closes and the Certificate Templates snap-in is added to the Console Root tree.

4. From the Console Root tree, double-click **Certificate Templates**. The list of templates is shown in the right pane.

Console1 - [Console Root\Certificate Templates]					
📸 Eile Action View Favorites Window Help					
🧰 Console Root	Template Display Name	Minimum Supported CAs 🛛 🛆	Version 🔺		
Certificate Templates	CEP Encryption	Windows 2000	4.1		
	Code Signing	Windows 2000	3.1		
	Computer	Windows 2000	5,1		
	Domain Controller	Windows 2000	4.1		
	EFS Recovery Agent	Windows 2000	6.1		
	Enrollment Agent	Windows 2000	4.1		
	Enrollment Agent (Computer)	Windows 2000	5.1 👻		
	1				
34 certificate templates					

Figure 10-2: Microsoft Management Console
5. In the right-pane, right-click the **Computer** template and select Duplicate Template. The Properties of New Template window opens.

Properties of New Template	? ×			
Issuance Requirements   Superseded Templates   Extensio General   Request Handling   Sub	ons   Security   ject Name			
T <u>e</u> mplate display name: Copy of Computer				
Minimum Supported CAs: Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition After you apply changes to this tab, you can no longer change the template				
Template name: Copy of Computer				
Validity period: <u>R</u> enewal period: 1 years ▼ 6 weeks ▼				
Publish certificate in Active Directory Do not automatically reenroll if a duplicate certificate exists in Active Directory				
OK Cancel	Apply			

Figure 10-3: Properties of New Template Window



- 6. Make sure that the **Publish certificate in Active Directory** check box is NOT selected.
- 7. In the Template display name field, enter a name for the template.
- 8. Click the **Extensions** tab. The Extensions tab opens.
- 9. From the list of extensions, select **Application Policies** and click **Edit**. The Edit Application Policies Extension window opens.
- 10. Click **Add**. The Add Application Policy window opens.
- 11. Click **New**. The New Application Policy window opens.
- 12. Enter a policy name, and in the Object Identifier field enter this OID for remote configuration: 2.16.840.1.113741.1.2.3

- 13. Click **OK** to return to the Add Application Policy window, click **OK** to return to the Edit Application Policies Extension window, and click **OK** to return to the Properties of New Template window.
- 14. Click the Subject Name tab and select Supply in the request.
- 15. Click the **Request Handling** tab and select the **Allow private key to be exported** check box.
- 16. Click **OK**. The Properties of New Template window closes.
- 17. Select **Start** > **Program Files** > **Administrative Tools** > **Certification Authority**. The Certification Authority window opens.
- 18. From the tree in the left pane, select **Certificate Templates**.
- 19. Right-click in the right pane and select **New > Certificate Template to Issue**.
- 20. In the Enable Certificate Templates window, select the template that you just created and click **OK**. The template is now included in the right pane with the other certificate templates.
- 21. Restart the CA (to publish the new template into Active Directory).

# 10.5.2 Requesting and Installing the Certificate

This procedure describes how to request and install the certificate on the computer running the RCS (RCSServer.exe).

### To install the certificate:

- 1. On the computer running the RCS, open an internet browser and connect to Certificate Services for the Root CA using this naming convention: http://CA\_FQDN/certsrv. If the CA requires an SSL connection, use this naming convention instead: https://CA\_FQDN/certsrv.
- 2. Click Request a certificate.
- 3. Click advanced certificate request.
- 4. Click Create and submit a request to this CA.
- 5. From the Certificate Template drop-down list, select the certificate template that you created (see Creating a Certificate Template on page 208e).
- 6. In the Identifying Information for Offline Template section, enter the domain name where the certificate will be used (the domain suffix or FQDN of the computer running the RCS) in the Name field.
- 7. Leave all the other default values and click **Submit**.
- 8. Install the certificate in the RCS user's certificate store and then restart the RCS.

# 10.5.3 Entering a Root Certificate Hash Manually in the Intel AMT Firmware

Normally the certificate hashes are programmed in the Intel AMT system firmware by the manufacturer. Alternatively, there is an option to enter the root certificate's hash manually via the Intel MEBX. (The names and locations of menu options might vary slightly in different Intel AMT versions.)

### To enter the certificate hash via the Intel MEBX:

- 1. Open the Root certificate and tab to Details. Keep the Root certificate thumbprint from the thumbprint field for use in step 7.
- 2. Power on the Intel AMT system and press <Ctrl-P> during boot.
- 3. When the Intel MEBX menu is displayed, do a full unconfiguration (unprovision).
- 4. From the Intel MEBX menu, select **Setup and Configuration** > **TLS PKI**.
- 5. Select Manage Certificate Hashes.
- 6. Press <Insert> and enter a name for the hash.
- 7. Enter the Root certificate thumbprint from step 1.
- 8. Answer Yes to the question about activating the hash.
- 9. Exit the Intel MEBX and reboot the Intel AMT system.

# **10.6 Remote Configuration Using Scripts**

Usually, when the RCS configures a system the configuration process is started when the Configurator sends a configuration request to the RCS. In certain conditions, this might not be applicable for your network environment. For example:

- If you want to use the "Bare Metal" option
- If you want to supply the RCS with the configuration data for each system, or start the configuration process from the RCS

Instead of using the Configurator, you can use "Hello" messages and a script.

## **10.6.1** How the Script Option Works

The RCS requires identification information for each Intel AMT system before it can perform the setup and configuration. The "Hello" message sent from an Intel AMT system contains the UUID of the Intel AMT system.

### When a Hello message arrives:

- 1. The RCS sets environment variables based on values in the Hello message, and activates the script.
- 2. The script reads the environment variables set by the RCS, and uses them to find the necessary identification information for the Intel AMT system.
- 3. The script uses the ConfigAMT command of the RCS API to send the configuration request to the RCS.
- 4. The RCS configures the system.

### **Environment Variables**

The RCS sets these environment variables:

- CS\_AMT\_UUID The UUID of the system
- CS\_AMT\_ADDRESS The IP address of the system
- CS\_AMT\_CONFIGURATION\_METHOD The configuration mode of the device:
  - 1 The device has a Private Share Key defined (PID-PPS)
  - 2 The device is set for PKI authentication
- CS\_AMT\_PID The PID of the TLS-PSK key (for PSK only)

# 10.6.2 Preparing to Use Scripts

To use the script option:

- The RCS must be set to listen for Hello messages and to use the script that you supply (see Defining the RCS Settings on page 73).
- The Intel AMT system must be prepared for configuration using one of these methods that use the TLS protocol:
  - One-Touch Configuration using PSK on page 6
  - Remote Configuration using PKI on page 6
- The Intel AMT system must send a Hello message. This will happen automatically if the system was prepared for "Bare Metal Setup and Configuration" by the manufacturer. If not, you can send a Hello message using the Configurator CLI (see Sending a Hello Message on page 147).

# 10.6.3 Defining a Script

Script functionality is the responsibility of the IT organization. The script can retrieve the information from an external source or from the host containing the Intel AMT device. For example:

- The script can send a Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) query to get the FQDN from the host using the IP address sent in the Hello message. This requires the host to be operational and running a version of Microsoft Windows that can process WMI queries.
- The script can get the FQDN from a pre-prepared database or file containing the UUID and FQDN of each Intel AMT device.

### Sample Script

Intel SCS includes a sample script (ConfigAMT.vbs). You can use the sample script as a basis for reference when creating your script. The script is located in this folder:

sample\_files\hello\_listener\_sample\_files.

# Chapter 11

# Troubleshooting

This chapter describes problems you might find when using Intel SCS, and provides their solutions.

For more information, see:

11.1	Damaged RCS Data Files	.215
11.2	Connecting to an RCS behind a Firewall	.215
11.3	Exit Code 88.	.216
11.4	Exit Code 110.	216
11.5	Remote Connection to Intel AMT Fails.	.217
11.6	Error with XML File or Missing SCSVersion Tag.	218
11.7	Reconfiguration of Dedicated IP and FQDN Settings	. 218
11.8	Disjointed Namespaces.	219
11.9	Disjointed Hostnames and AD Objects	220
11.10	Kerberos Authentication Failure	221
11.11	Error: "Kerberos User is not Permitted to Configure"	221
11.12	Error: "The Caller is Unauthorized."	. 221
11.13	Error when Removing AD Integration (Error in SetKerberos).	.222
11.14	Failed Certificate Requests via Microsoft CA	.222
11.15	Delta Profile Fails to Configure WiFi Settings.	.223
11.16	Disabling the Wireless Interface	.223
11.17	Configuration via Jobs Fails because of OTP Setting	.224

# 11.1 Damaged RCS Data Files

If one of the data files used by the RCS (in non-database mode) is damaged or missing:

- The Console shows a "login failure" message when trying to connect to the RCS.
- When you try to save a profile, the Console shows an error message.

### Solution:

Restore the latest backup version of the data files to the correct location (see Backing up Data on page 50). If you did not create a backup, do one of these:

• Uninstall and then reinstall the RCS (non-database mode). This creates new empty copies of all the required data files.

- OR-

- In the registry of the computer running the RCS, add a DWORD key with the name "Recover" to this key:
  - 32-bit operating systems: HKLM\SOFTWARE\Intel\ Intel(R) Setup and Configuration Software\9
  - 64-bit operating systems: HKLM\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\Intel\ Intel(R) Setup and Configuration Software\9

When the RCS starts, it checks if this key exists. If the key exists with a value not equal to zero, the RCS will automatically create a new empty file for each damaged or missing data file. Only damaged or missing data files are replaced.

## 11.2 Connecting to an RCS behind a Firewall

If you install the RCS on a computer that is protected by a firewall, you might receive error messages when you try to connect to the RCS.

### Solution:

You must make sure that the firewall is configured to enable the WMI to connect to the RCS. For more information, refer to the Microsoft Developer Network:

http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa389286(VS.85).aspx

# 11.3 Exit Code 88

This error means that authentication of the ACU.dll file (used by the Configurator) has failed and the requested operation was aborted. This error means that the file is corrupted and thus is not trusted by Intel SCS. Reasons for corruption can include changes made to the file by viruses or hardware failures.

# 11.4 Exit Code 110

This error can occur if both these conditions are true:

- 1. The certificate chain of the digital certificate cannot be validated locally by the host operating system on the Intel AMT system.
- 2. The host operating system on the Intel AMT system failed to access the Internet.

Digital certificates contain data about the organization from which they were issued. This data forms a "certificate chain" that ends in a trusted root certificate of a known CA. If the trusted root certificate is not installed in the operating system, Windows uses an automatic update mechanism to download the necessary root certificate from Microsoft.

Some versions of Windows (for example, Windows 8) do not include all the trusted root certificates necessary to validate time-stamped digital signatures. If these systems also do not have Internet access, the automatic update mechanism will fail.

### Solutions:

- Make sure that host operating system has access to the Internet. This is the easiest solution because the certificate will be downloaded automatically.
- If you cannot connect the Intel AMT system to the Internet, manually download and install a root certificate update package from the Microsoft update catalog. Select the relevant package for the operating system from this website:

http://catalog.update.microsoft.com/v7/site/Search.aspx?q=root%20certificate%20update

# **11.5 Remote Connection to Intel AMT Fails**

During configuration, an IP address is set in the Intel AMT device. This IP address is used by management consoles (and Intel SCS) to remotely connect to Intel AMT.

If the IP address is incorrect, these problems might occur:

- Your management console will not be able to connect to the device.
- If you are using the RCS to configure systems:
  - This error: "Post configuration connection to the Intel(R) AMT device failed" in the RCS log file. This error occurs because, after configuration is complete, the RCS tries (and fails) to connect to the device to test the connection.
  - In database mode, the "Connection Status" column in the Console will show that the RCS failed to connect to these systems.

#### Solutions:

The first step is to check the IP address that is defined in the Intel AMT device. To do this, use the standalone Discovery Utility or the SystemDiscovery command. For more information, see Discovering Systems on page 126.

The value of the IP address is located in this tag/registry key:

Configurationinfo > AMTNetworkSettings > AMTWiredNetworkAdapter > IPv4IPSettings > IP.

- If this tag/registry key contains the correct IP address:
  - In the Domain Name System (DNS), make sure that this IP address is associated with the correct FQDN for the Intel AMT system.
  - If you have a Firewall in your network, make sure that the ports used by Intel AMT are not blocked (16992; 16993; 16994; 16995; 5900).
- If this tag/registry key contains a value of "**0.0.0.0**", this means that the device is waiting to be updated by the DHCP server. This can occur after you do any of these:
  - Configure a system to use DHCP, but the system was already configured to use a static IP.
  - Run a "Full" unconfiguration on a system (this sets the system back to the default which uses an IP address from the DHCP server).

To fix this problem, it is recommended to run this command on the Intel AMT system to immediately update the IP address: ipconfig /renew

After the IP address is correctly defined in the Intel AMT device, all remote connections should work without any problems. In database mode, to change the Connection Status, you can run a job on these systems (for example, a maintenance job). When the job finishes, the RCS will test the connection again and then update the Connection Status.

# 11.6 Error with XML File or Missing SCSVersion Tag

Errors 37 or 38 are returned by the Configurator if problems exist with the configuration profile XML file. These errors usually occur when the Configurator cannot find the file or read the data that it contains.

### Solutions:

- In the command line, make sure that you supplied the correct name for the XML file. For example, if the filename contains spaces, you must supply the filename in quotes (like this: "My Profile").
- Make sure that the profile is a valid profile. Profiles created using Intel SCS 7.0 are NOT supported. These profiles do not have the mandatory <SCSVersion> tag. Even if you add the missing <SCSVersion> tag, the profile is still invalid because it contains tags and values not supported by Intel SCS 9.x. (Profiles created using Intel SCS 7.1 include this tag and are valid for use by Intel SCS 9.x.)

### 📝 Note:

Try and open the profile using the Intel AMT Configurator Utility supplied in Intel SCS 9.1. To do this, select **Create Settings to Configure Multiple Systems** and browse to the folder containing the profile. If the profile is not shown in the list of profiles it is not a valid profile.

- If the Intel AMT system is running Windows XP, make sure that service pack 3 is installed.
- If the profile is encrypted, these errors can occur on Intel AMT systems running Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008. This is because of a known Microsoft issue. Install this hotfix: <u>http://support.microsoft.com/kb/981118</u>.

# **11.7 Reconfiguration of Dedicated IP and FQDN Settings**

Reconfiguration can fail when all these conditions are true:

- 1. The Intel AMT device was configured with an FQDN and IP different from the host operating system (for example, by using a dedicated network settings file).
- 2. The dedicated network settings file contains FQDN and IP values different from those currently defined in the Intel AMT device.
- 3. Intel SCS needs to reconfigure the device using the new values in the dedicated network settings file.

### Solution:

Make sure you supply the current IP address or FQDN of the Intel AMT device in the <CurrentAMTAddress> tag of the dedicated network settings file.

# **11.8 Disjointed Namespaces**

A disjointed namespace occurs when the primary Domain Name System (DNS) suffix of a computer does not match the DNS domain of which it is a member. Defining a network environment with disjointed namespaces (intentionally or accidentally) can cause many different types of communication and authentication failures.

For Intel AMT, these failures can be related to:

- Configuration/Reconfiguration
- Authentication using Kerberos users in the Access Control List (ACL)
- Authentication using Transport Layer Security (TLS)

#### Solution:

If integration with Active Directory (AD) is enabled, during configuration Intel SCS sends a request to create an AD object for the Intel AMT device. Some of the entries in this object define parameters used in Kerberos tickets. For example, the DNS Host Name and the Service Principal Names (SPNs). If these entries in the AD object are configured using the correct DNS name, problems with disjointed namespaces can be avoided. For example, "Object 2" in this diagram was created by Intel SCS using an FQDN in the Intel AMT device (System1.DDC.com) that matches the DNS name.



### To implement this solution:

- 1. Check in the DNS to find the correct name that can be resolved using DNS resolution. This name needs to be inserted into the FQDN of the Intel AMT device.
- 2. Use Intel SCS to configure/reconfigure the Intel AMT device with the required FQDN. Intel SCS includes several options for the source it can use when inserting the FQDN into the Intel AMT device (see Defining IP and FQDN Settings on page 120).

# **11.9 Disjointed Hostnames and AD Objects**

A disjointed hostname occurs when the hostname in the Domain Name System (DNS) is not the same as the hostname assigned in Windows. This can occur when the hostname in DNS contains characters that are not valid characters in a Windows hostname. Disjointed hostnames usually occur when the network environment is using a DNS hierarchy and needs to support different DNS zones. To support this hierarchy, the hostname in DNS can be defined by joining the DNS zones and using periods as a separator. Because periods are not valid in the Windows hostname, the FQDN in Windows must be defined differently. For example by using underscores instead of periods, as shown in this table (where the hostname part of the FQDN is marked in yellow):

Example	Record in DNS	FQDN in Host Operating System
#1	10.0.0.7=System1.DNS1.DDC.com	System1_DNS1.DDC.com
#2	10.0.0.8=System1.DNS2.DDC.com	System1_DNS2.DDC.com

If integration with Active Directory (AD) is enabled, during configuration Intel SCS sends a request to create an AD object for the Intel AMT device. By default, the object is created using the hostname part of the FQDN that Intel SCS configured in the Intel AMT device. The value of the FQDN that Intel SCS configures in the Intel AMT device is defined in the configuration profile. Most of these options take the hostname from the operating system.

The DNS Look Up FQDN option takes the name returned by an "nslookup" on the IP address of the on-board wired LAN interface. In the examples above, this would mean that the FQDN defined in the Intel AMT device is the same as the FQDN shown in the Record in DNS Column. When multiple records in DNS have identical values for the first part of the hostname (in this example "System1"), this can cause problems when creating AD objects. This is because the AD object is created using only the first part of the hostname, up to the first period. The result is that only one AD object will be created even though multiple Intel AMT devices exist.

### Solution:

In the AD Integration window, select the **Always use the OS Host Name for the new AD Object** check box (see Defining Active Directory Integration on page 90).

When this check box is selected, the AD object will always be created using the hostname defined in the operating system.

# **11.10 Kerberos Authentication Failure**

If integration with Active Directory (AD) is enabled, during configuration Intel SCS creates an AD object for the Intel AMT device. The values of the Service Principal Name (SPN) attribute in this object are used in Kerberos tickets during AD authentication.

If the AD forest contains more than one object representing the same Intel AMT device, the Kerberos authentication will fail. This is because identical SPN values exist for different objects. The AD does not know which SPN to use, and thus an error occurs.

Multiple objects can be created during reconfiguration when you change the AD Organizational Unit (ADOU) defined in the profile (see Defining Active Directory Integration on page 90). If you do not use the /ADOU flag in the CLI, Intel SCS does not know the location of the old object and thus cannot delete it.

### Solution:

Make sure that the AD forest contains only one AD object for each Intel AMT device.

If not:

- 1. Manually delete the object from the old ADOU.
- 2. Wait approximately 15 minutes, or manually purge the Kerberos tickets. (You can use the Klist.exe applicaton to purge the tickets.)

# 11.11 Error: "Kerberos User is not Permitted to Configure.."

Usually, this error will occur if all these conditions are true:

- The requested operation will change the FQDN setting in the Intel AMT device, or the Intel AMT Active Directory object.
- The requested operation is run using a Kerberos admin user.
- The password of the default Digest admin user is not defined in the profile or supplied in the CLI command (using the /AdminPassword parameter).

This is to prevent losing connection to the device when changing these settings.

### Solution:

Define the Digest admin password in the profile or the CLI command.

## 11.12 Error: "The Caller is Unauthorized."

Intel AMT includes a security mechanism to prevent brute force attacks that are trying to "crack" the Digest admin password. If a brute force attack is detected, connection to the device is blocked and error messages like these are recorded in the log file:

Intel(R) AMT connection error 0xc000521d: The caller is unauthorized.

After connection to the device is blocked, this error will continue to occur even when trying to connect with the correct password.

### Solution:

Wait for approximately one hour and then try the requested operation again.

## 11.13 Error when Removing AD Integration (Error in SetKerberos)

For some Intel AMT 4.x and 5.x systems, this warning can occur during reconfiguration with a profile that contains TLS settings but disables Active Directory (AD) integration:

error in SetKerberos (1) Failed while calling WS-Management call

### SetKerberosSettings

This warning occurs only if the system was initially configured with a profile containing TLS settings and AD integration enabled. The result is that configuration is completed (including TLS), but the AD integration is not disabled.

### Solution:

This is a known limitation that was solved in versions 4.2.30 and 5.2.30 of the Intel AMT firmware. For systems with this problem:

- 1. Reconfigure the system using a profile that disables TLS and Active Directory.
- 2. Reconfigure the system using a profile that enables and defines the required TLS settings.

### 11.14 Failed Certificate Requests via Microsoft CA

Due to Microsoft limitations, creation of the certificate might fail in these situations

- If the FQDN of the Intel AMT device is longer than 64 characters
- If the certificate Subject Name is longer than 256 characters
- If the CN in the Subject Name field is the Distinguished Name, and this Distinguished Name is longer than 256 characters

#### Solution:

Make sure that the values in the generated certificate will not exceed the maximum values listed above. A possible solution for large values in the Subject Name field is to define a CN that will contain less characters (see User-defined CNs on page 200).

# **11.15 Delta Profile Fails to Configure WiFi Settings**

In certain conditions, reconfiguring a configured system using a "Delta" profile containing WiFi Connection settings does not enable WiFi in the Intel AMT device. The configuration will complete with warnings, and the log file will include this error:

A WSMAN command returned an error: GetField: no such field named "LinkPolicy"

This can occur if all these conditions are true:

- The system was configured using a profile that disabled WiFi in the Intel AMT device (the profile did not include WiFi Connection settings).
- The system was then reconfigured using a Delta profile that included WiFi Connection settings, but did NOT include Power Management settings.
- The Delta profile was created in a version of Intel SCS earlier than Intel SCS 8.1.

### Solution:

A check box was added to the Network Configuration window of the profile (Enable WiFi connection also in S1-S5 operating power system states). This solves the problem because the power management settings for the wireless NIC can now be configured using a delta profile. During upgrade/migration, this check box is not added to delta profiles (to support backwards compatibility).

To add the check box and reconfigure the system:

- 1. Open the delta profile in Intel SCS 9.x. (When you open the profile, the check box is added.)
- 2. In the Network Configuration window, verify that the status of the new check box is what you require (selected/not selected).
- 3. Save the profile.
- 4. Reconfigure the system using the Delta profile.

## 11.16 Disabling the Wireless Interface

Intel AMT includes a wireless interface that can be enabled or disabled during configuration. You can define this setting in the profile using the WiFi Connection check box (see Defining Profile Optional Settings on page 89).

To disable the interface after it has been enabled, you can remove the WiFi Connection settings from the profile and then reconfigure the system. But, reconfiguration does not always disable the wireless interface. This is a known limitation of some versions of the Intel AMT Firmware.

#### Solution:

If reconfiguration did not close the wireless interface:

- 1. Unconfigure the system.
- 2. Reconfigure the system using a profile containing the settings that you want.

# 11.17 Configuration via Jobs Fails because of OTP Setting

A configuration operation, defined in a job, will fail on a system when all of these conditions are true:

- 1. The system is in the "Unconfigured" status.
- 2. The system is defined to use PKI authentication during configuration.
- 3. The RCS is defined to require a One-Time Password (OTP) when a system is configured using PKI authentication. This setting is defined in the Configuration Options tab (see Defining the RCS Settings on page 73).

The failure occurs because the RCS cannot remotely set the OTP in the Intel AMT device. (This is usually done by the Configurator when it sends the configuration request to the RCS.)

### Solution:

Remove the requirement for an OTP. To do this, select **None** in the Advanced Configuration Options section of the Configuration Options tab.

### 🗹 Note:

Changing this setting to None will also cancel the OTP requirement for all future remote configuration requests sent from the Configurator. For more information about OTP, see About Remote Configuration on page 204.